

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES • VOLUME 11

EREC AND ENITE

HARTMANN VON AUE

Erec

Erec and Enite

Part One: The Sparrowhawk and the Ride

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

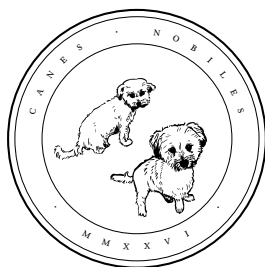


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 11 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Erec: eine Erzählung von Hartmann von Aue,
zweite Ausgabe von Moriz Haupt (Leipzig: S. Hirzel, 1871), verses 1 to 5287

Set from a page scan of the 1871 printing

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench

Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Haupt numbers them, every fifth verse in the outer margin. A verse the manuscript lost, which Haupt counts and marks with an asterisk, is set as three asterisks and glossed as a lacuna; the one gap he leaves uncounted, after verse 4629, is set the same way and not counted. The poem's opening is lost, and the text begins where the Ambras manuscript does. The paragraphs are the edition's own indented breaks; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Queen's Maiden and the Dwarf	7
II · Tulmein, and the Old Man's House	17
III · Coralus, and Erec's Suit	32
IV · The Sparrowhawk, and the Joust	46
V · The Sword Fight with Iders	59
VI · The Dwarf Punished, and the White Stag	71
VII · Iders Before the Queen	79
VIII · Imain's Feast, and the Palfrey	89
IX · Enite Clothed at Court, and the Round Table	102

X · The Kiss, and the Gifts to Coralus	114
XI · The Wedding Guests	126
XII · The Dwarf Kings, and the Wedding	138
XIII · Erec's Arms, and the Eve of the Tournament	149
XIV · The Tournament: The First Jousts	159
XV · The Tournament: Erec Bareheaded	173
XVI · Karnant, and the Idle Days	187
XVII · The Three Robbers	203
XVIII · The Five Robbers	215
XIX · The Squire, and the Count	228
XX · The Count's Suit	238
XXI · Enite's Ruse	249
XXII · The Escape, and the Count's Pursuit	260
XXIII · Guivreiz the Small	277
XXIV · The Two Wounded Men, and the Night with Guivreiz . . .	289
XXV · Keii, and Gawein's Horse	299
XXVI · Gawein's Wile	314
XXVII · Famurgan's Salve, and the Parting	329

The Queen's Maiden and the Dwarf

I

The poem opens mid-sentence, its beginning lost, with Erec, son of King Lac, riding beside the queen and her women. A knight approaches with a lady and a dwarf. The queen sends a maiden to ask who they are, and the dwarf whips her. Erec rides over and is whipped too, and being unarmed he cannot fight back. Ashamed, he vows to avenge himself and return by the third day. The queen reluctantly lets him go, and he follows unarmed, since fetching his armor would lose the knight.

bî ir und bî ir wîben.

by her and by her women.

ditz was Êrec fil de roi Lac,

this was Erec son of king Lac,

der frûmekeit und sælden pflac,

who of-prowess and of-fortune took-care,

durch den diu rede erhaben ist.

for whom the story raised is.

nû riten sî unlange frist

now rode they not-long a-while

neben ein ander beide

beside one another both

ê daz sî über die heide

before that they over the heath

verre in allen gâhen

far in all haste

zuo rîten sâhen

toward ride saw

ein ritter selbedritten,

a knight himself-the-third,

5

10

vor ein getwerc, da enmitten
ahead a dwarf, there in-the-midst

eine juncfrowen gemeit,
a young-lady gay,

schœne unde wol gekleit.
fair and well clothed.

nû wundert die kûnegîn
now wondered the queen

15 wer der ritter möhte sîn.
who the knight might be.

er was ze harnasche wol,
he was in armor well,

als ein guot kneht sol.
as a good warrior shall.

Êrec der junge man
Erec the young man

sîn frouwen frâgen began
his lady to-ask began

20 ob erz ervarn solde.
whether he-it find-out should.

diu frouwe des niht wolde.
the lady of-that not would.

sî bat in dâ bî ir tweln.
she bade him there by her tarry.

ein juncfroun gundes ûz weln
a young-lady began-she out to-choose

die sî möhte senden dar.
whom she might send thither.

25 sî sprach 'rît unde ervar
she said 'ride and learn

wer der ritter müge sîn,
who the knight may be,

und sîn geverte, dez magedîn.'
and his companion, the maiden.'

diu juncfrou huop sich an die vart,
the young-lady betook herself on the way,

als ir geboten wart,
as to-her commanded was,

dâ sî daz twerc rîten sach.
where she the dwarf ride saw.

30

mit zûhten sî zuo im sprach
with courtesy she to him spoke

‘got grüeze iuch, geselle,
‘God greet you, comrade,

und vernemet waz ich welle.
and hear what I want.

mîn frouwe hât mich her gesant
my lady has me hither sent

(diu ist kûnegin über daz lant):
(she is queen over the land):

35

durch ir zuht gebôt sî mir
out-of her breeding commanded she me

daz ich iuch gruozte von ir,
that I you greeted from her,

und weste gerne mære
and would-know gladly tidings

wer der ritter wære
who the knight were

und disiu maget wol getân.
and this maiden well made.

40

mugt ir mich daz wizzen lân?
may you me that know let?

âne schaden ir daz tuot:
without harm you that do:

mîn frouwe frâget wan durch guot.’
my lady asks only for good.’

daz getwerc enwolt ir niht sagen
the dwarf would to-her not say

45 unde hiez sî stille dagen,
and bade her still be-silent,

unde daz sî in vermite:
and that she him should-avoid:

si enweste war nâch sî rite.
she knew-not what after she rode.

diu magt enlie niht umbe daz
the maiden refrained not for that

si enwolde rîten fûrbaz,
she would ride further,

50 den ritter frâgen mære
the knight to-ask tidings

selben wer er wære.
himself who he were.

daz getwerc werete ir den wec
the dwarf barred to-her the way

(daz sach diu kûnegin unde Êrec),
(that saw the queen and Erec),

daz ez sî mit der geisel sluoc,
so-that it her with the whip struck,

55 die ez in der hant truoc,
which it in the hand carried,

über haupt und über hende,
over head and over hands,

ze sîner missewende,
to his discredit,

daz sî mâl dâ von gewan.
that she welts there from got.

mit solher antwurt schiet sî dan

with such answer departed she thence

wider zuo ir frouwen

back to her lady

60

unde liez sî schouwen

and let her behold

wie sêre sî was geslagen.

how sorely she was struck.

daz gunde sî vil tiure klagen

that began she very bitterly to-lament

daz ez ir sô nâhen was geschehen

that it to-her so near had happened

daz siz muoste an sehen.

that she-it had-to at look.

65

Êrec dô ahten began

Erec then to-consider began

der riter wær niht ein frum man,

the knight were not a worthy man,

daz er ez vor im vertruoc

that he it before him tolerated

daz sîn getwerc die maget sluoc.

that his dwarf the maiden struck.

er sprach 'ich wil rîten dar,

he said 'I will ride thither,

70

daz ich iu diu mære ervar.'

that I for-you the tidings learn.'

diu frouwe sprach 'nû rît enwec.'

the lady said 'now ride away.'

zehant huop sich Êrec:

at-once betook himself Erec:

und als er in sô nâhen kam

and when he them so near came

daz dez twerc die rede vernam,

that the dwarf the speech heard,

75

er sprach 'nû mugt ir mir gesagen,
he said 'now may you to-me tell,

wes habt ir die magt geslagen?
why have you the maiden struck?

ir habt sêre missetân.
you have sorely done-wrong.

ir soltz durch iuwer zuht lân.
you should-it for your breeding forbear.

80 iuern herren sult ir mir nennen:
your lord shall you to-me name:

mîn frouwe wolde in erkennen
my lady would him know

und daz schoene magedîn.'
and the fair maiden.'

daz getwerc sprach 'lâz dîn klaffen sîn.
the dwarf said 'let thy chattering be.

ich ensage dir anders niht
I tell thee else nothing

85 wan daz dir alsam geschiht.
but that to-thee likewise happens.

waz wolde sî der mære
what would she of-the tidings

wer mîn herre wære?
who my lord were?

ir sît niht wîse liute,
you are not wise people,

daz ir sô vil hiute
that you so much today

90 gefrâget von mîm herren:
asked about my lord:

ez mac iu wol gewerren.
it may to-you well bring-harm.

wil dû daz ich dichs erlâze,
(if)-wilt thou that I thee-of-it spare,

sô rît dîne strâze,
then ride thy road,

und hebe dich der sunnen haz.'
and betake thee the sun's bate.'

Êrec der wolt ouch fürbaz,
Erec he would also furtber,

95

wan daz imz daz twerc niht vertruoc:
but that to-him-it the dwarf not allowed:

mit der geisel ez in sluoc,
with the whip it him struck,

als ez der magt hete getân.
as it to-the maiden had done.

ouch wolt er sich gerochen hân,
also would he himself avenged have,

wan daz er wîslîchen
but that he wisely

100

sîm zorne kunde entwîchen.
from-his anger could withdraw.

der ritter het im gnomen den lîp,
the knight would-have from-him taken the life,

wand Êrec was blôz als ein wîp.
for Erec was bare as a woman.

er gelebt im nie leidern tac
he lived for-himself never more-grievous day

dan umbe den geiselslac
than for the whip-blow

105

und schamt sich nie sô sêre
and was-ashamed himself never so sorely

wan daz dise unêre
but that this dishonor

diu kûnegin mit ir frouwen sach.
the queen with her ladies saw.

als im der geiselslac geschach,
when to-him the whip-blow befell,

- 110 mit grôzer schame er wider reit.
with great shame he back rode.

alsô klagete er sîn leit
thus lamented he his sorrow

(schamvar wart er undern ougen):
(shame-colored became he under-the eyes):

‘frouwe, ich mac des niht verlougen,
‘lady, I can of-it not deny,

wand ir ez selbe habt gesehen,
for you it yourself have seen,

- 115 mir ensî vor iu geschehen
to-me has before you happened

ein schande alsô grôz
a disgrace so great

daz ir nie dehein mîn genôz
that of-it never any my equal

eines hâres mê gewan.
a hair's more got.

daz mich ein sus wênic man
that me a so little man

- 120 sô lasterlîchen hât geslagen
so shamefully has struck

und ich im daz muoz vertragen,
and I from-him that must bear,

des scham ich mich sô sêre
of-that am-ashamed I myself so sorely

daz ich iuch nimmer mêre
that I you never more

fûrbaz getar schouwen
further dare behold

- 125 und dise juncfrouwen.
and these young-ladies.

ichn weiz zwiu mir daz leben sol,
I-not know what-for to-me the life shall,

ezn sî daz ich mich des erhol
unless-it be that I myself of-it recover

daz mir vor iu geschehen ist.
which to-me before you happened is.

ich ensterbe in kurzer frist,
I unless-die in short time,

sô sol ichz versuochen.
then shall I-it attempt.

frouwe, ir sult geruochen
lady, you shall deign

daz ich in iuvern hulden var.
that I in your favor fare.

der himelkeiser bewar,
the heaven-emperor protect,

frouwe, iuwer êre.
lady, your honor.

ir geseht mich nimmer mêre,
you see me never more,

ichn gereche mich an disem man
unless-I avenge myself on this man

von des getwerge ich mâl gewan.
from whose dwarf I welts got.

ist daz mich got sô gêret
(if)-is that me God so honors

daz er mîn heil mêret,
that be my weal increases,

daz mir dar an gelinget
that to-me there in succeeds

als doch mîn muot gedinget,
as yet my spirit hopes,

sô kum ich über den dritten tac,
then come I by the third day,

130

135

140

ob ich vor siechtuome mac.'

if I for sickness can.'

der küneginne was vil leit

to-the queen was very grievous

145 daz er alsô junger reit

that he so young rode

ûf sô grôze freise:

upon so great peril:

sî bat in lân die reise.

she bade him leave the expedition.

sô langer dô urloubes gerte

so long-he then of-leave asked

unz daz sî ins gewerte.

until that she him-of-it granted.

150 ouch dâhte der junkherre,

also thought the young-lord,

im wære daz ze verre,

to-him were that too far,

ob er zuo den selben zîten

if he at the same times

hin wider wolde rîten

thither back would ride

da er sînen harnasch hâte,

where he his armor had,

155 und daz er alsô drâte

and that he so quickly

in nimmer genæme,

it never would-take,

swie schiere er wider kæme,

however soon he back came,

sô wæren si im entriten gar:

so would-have they from-him ridden-away wholly:

und îlte in nâch alsô bar.

and hastened them after so bare.

Tulmein, and the Old Man's House

II

Erec follows the knight at a distance until evening, when they reach Tulmein, the castle of Duke Imain. Every year the duke's feast gives a sparrowhawk to the fairest lady, and the knight has won it twice unopposed. With no money or armor, Erec finds no lodging in the crowded town and turns to an old ruin. There a gray-haired man in poor clothes welcomes him, his beautiful daughter in a torn green gown tends the palfrey, and the family offers what little they have.

do er in begunde gâhen nâ,

when he them began to-hasten after,

160

dô kom er rehte ûf ir slâ

then came he right upon their track

von den im schade was geschehen.

from whom to-him harm had happened.

vil schiere begunders an sehen.

very soon began-be-them at to-look.

zuo in was im niht ze gâch:

toward them was to-him not too hasty:

er reit in alsô verre nâch

he rode them so far after

165

daz er sî sach und sî in niht.

that he them saw and they him not.

er tete als dem dâ leit geschiht:

he did as the-one to-whom sorrow befalls:

der vlîzt sich dicke dar zuo

who strives himself often there toward

wie erz mit fuoge widertuo.

how he-it with fitness may-require.

- 170 sîne kômen ûf dem wege
they came on the way
 ûz sîner ougen phlege
out-of his eyes' keeping
 des vil langen tages nie
the very long day never
 unz daz der âbent ane gie.
until that the evening on came.
 nû sach er wâ gegen im schein
now saw he where toward him shone
- 175 ein hûs geheizen Tulmein;
a house called Tulmein;
 der wirt der herzoge Îmâin.
the host the duke Imain.
 dâ reit der ritter vor im in:
there rode the knight before him in:
 dâ wart er enphangen wol,
there was he received well,
 sô man ze friundes hûse sol
as one at friend's house shall
- 180 und als dem wirt wol gezam.
and as to-the host well befitted.
 ich sage iu durch waz er kam
I tell you for what he came
 mit sîner friundîn.
with his lady-love.
 ez het der herzoge Îmâin
it had the duke Imain
 hôchzît dâ vor zwei jâr:
feast there before two years:
- 185 sagt diu âventiure wâr,
(if)-says the adventure true,
 sô heter sî dô zem dritten.
so had-he it then for-the third.

an eine wise enmitten

on a meadow in-the-midst

het er hôhe an eine stat

had he high on a place

einen sparwær ûf gesat

a sparrowhawk up set

ûf eine stange silberîn.

upon a perch silver.

190

ditz muoste jêrlîche sîn,

this must yearly be,

ze freuden sîner lantdiet.

for joy of-his country-folk.

von der rede er niemen schiet,

from the matter he no-one excluded,

niuwan daz gelîche

except that equally

arme unde rîche,

poor and rich,

195

alte unde junge,

old and young,

durch schoene handelunge

for fair entertainment

ze sîner freude kâmen

to his joy should-come

swenne siz vernæmen.

whenever they-it heard.

swes friundinne den strît

whose lady-love the contest

200

behielt ze sîner hôchzît,

won at his feast,

daz sî diu schoenste wære,

that she the fairest were,

diu nam den sparwære.

she took the sparrowhawk.

den hâte der ritter genomen

it had the knight taken

205 zwir, ouch was er komen

twice, also was he come

daz ern zem dritten næme:

that he-it for-the third should-take:

und ob ez alsô kæme,

and if it so should-come,

sô het er in immer mêre

then would-have he it ever more

âne strît mit voller êre.

without contest with full honor.

210 nû sagte man daz mære

now told one the tidings

daz dâ manec wîp schoener wære

that there many-a woman fairer were

danne des ritters friundîn.

than the knight's lady-love.

dô was sîn frûmekeit dar an schîn:

then was his prowess there in evident:

er was alsô vorhtesam

he was so fearsome

215 daz ern mit gewalte nam.

that he-it with force took.

in getorste dâ nieman bestân:

him dared there no-one face:

strîtes wart er gar erlân.

of-contest was he wholly spared.

nûne weste Êrec niht

now knew Erec not

umbe dise aneschiht,

about this circumstance,

wan daz er im durch sîn leit
but that he him for his grievance

220

ûf âventiure nâch reit.
upon adventure after rode.

nu begunde sîgen der tac.
now began to-sink the day.

ein market underm hûse lac:
a market-town below-the house lay:

dâ kom er geriten in.
there came he ridden in.

die burc meit er durch den sin
the castle avoided he for the reason

225

daz er sîn iht wurde gewar
lest he of-him at-all should-become aware

dem er het gevolget dar.
whom he had followed thither.

nû er suochende reit
as he seeking rode

wer in durch sîne frûmekeit
who him for his prowess

des nahtes nâme in sîne phlege,
for-the night would-take in his care,

230

nû vant er an dem wege
now found he on the way

von den liuten grôzen schal:
from the people great noise:

diu hiuser wâren über al
the houses were over all

beherberget vaste:
lodged fully:

der sich sîn ze gaste
who himself of-him as guest

235

wolde underwinden,
would undertake,

den kunde er niender vinden.

him could he nowhere find.

ouch was er habelôs dâ gar.

also was he possessionless there wholly.

er het sich niht gewarnet dar:

he had himself not provided thither:

240 wand in kom diu reise gâhes an,

for him came the expedition suddenly on,

als ich iu dâ vor gesaget han.

as I to-you there before said have.

er het dâ niht mêre

he had there nothing more

(daz bekumbert in dô sêre)

(that troubled him then sorely)

wan daz phärt und sîn gewant.

but the palfrey and his clothing.

245 ouch was er dâ unerkant,

also was he there unknown,

daz im niemen zuo sprach

that to-him no-one to spoke

noch ze guote an sach.

nor for good at looked.

die gazzen wâren spils vol,

the streets were of-play full,

als ez ze hôchzîten sol.

as it at feasts shall.

250 nû reit er alsô wîselôs,

now rode he so guideless,

unz daz er verre vor im kôs

until that he far before him descried

ein altez gemiure.

an old ruin.

dô im dô sô tiure

when to-him then so scarce

die herberge wâren,

the lodgings were,

eins weges begunder vâren

a way began-he to-pursue

der in dar brâhte;

which him thither brought;

wander im gedâhte

for-he to-himself thought

des nahtes belîben dâ,

for-the night stay there,

wand ern möhte anderswâ.

for he-not could elsewhere.

daz hûs er schouwen begunde

the house he to-examine began

und wânde niht daz er funde

and thought not that he should-find

ieman dar inne:

anyone there in:

daz freute sîne sinne.

that gladdened his senses.

er gedâht 'mîn dinc daz vert nû wol,

he thought 'my affair it fares now well,

wand ich in einem winkel sol

for I in a corner shall

belîben hinne unz an den tac:

stay here until at the day:

sît iz niht wesen baz enmac,

since it not be better can,

des gan man mir doch âne strît.

this grants one to-me yet without dispute.

ich sihe wol daz ez œde lît.'

I see well that it desolate lies.'

255

260

265

- 270 als er in daz hûs kam
when he into the house came
 und er der winkel war genam,
and he of-the corners heed took,
 welher im dar zuo töhte
which to-him there for should-serve
 dâ er inne belîben möhte,
where he in stay might,
 dô sach er sitzen dâ
then saw he sitting there
- 275 einen man, der was grâ,
a man, who was gray,
 sîn hâr von alter snêwîz:
his hair from age snow-white:
 des het er dannoch guoten vlîz
of-it had he still good diligence
 daz ers nâch reinem site phlac:
that he-it after clean custom tended:
 vil wol gestrælet ez lac
very well combed it lay
- 280 über sîn ahsel ze tal.
over his shoulder to downward.
 nâch der âventiure zal
according-to the adventure's account
 sô het der selbe altman
so had the same old-man
 eine schâfkürsen an
a sheepskin-coat on
 und des selben ûf einen huot:
and of-the same on a hat:
- 285 diu wâren beidiu alsô guot
they were both as good
 als in sîn state leite:
as him his means directed:

ern phlac niht rîcheite.

he kept not finery.

sîn bærde was vil hêrlîch,

his bearing was very lordly,

einem edeln manne glîch.

to-a noble man like.

ein krücke was sîn stiure,

a crutch was his support,

der dâ saz in dem gemiure.

who there sat in the ruin.

ditz was Êrecke leit:

this was to-Erec grievous:

wand er vorht die gwonheit,

for he feared the custom,

er solt in ûz getriben hân,

he should him out driven have,

als im vor was getân.

as to-him before was done.

daz phârt er ze stete bant:

the palfrey he on-the spot tied:

dar ûf leite er sîn gewant.

there upon laid he his clothing,

sîn hende habte er fûr sich,

his hands held he before himself,

eim wol gezogenem manne glîch,

to-a well bred man like,

und gienc dâ er den alten sach.

and went where he the old-one saw.

mit zwîvel er zuo im sprach

with doubt he to him spoke

‘herre, mir wær herberge nôt.’

‘lord, to-me were lodging need.’

diu bete machte in schamerôt.

the request made him shame-red.

290

295

300

als in der alte het vernomen,
when him the old-one had heard,

305 er sprach 'nû sît mir willekomen
he said 'now be to-me welcome

ze dem und ich nû haben mac.'
to that which I now have can.'

des gnâdet im fil de roi Lac.
for-that thanked him son of king Lac.

nû het er ingesindes
now had he of-household

niuwan eines kindes
only of-a child

310 (diu was ein diu schoenste magt
(who was one the fairest maiden

von der uns ie wart gesagt)
of whom to-us ever was told)

und der hûsfrouwen.
and the housewife.

dar an moht man schouwen
there by might one behold

daz er rîches muotes wîelt,
that he of-rich spirit possessed,

315 daz er den gast sô arm enthielt.
that he the guest so poor entertained.

dem kinde ruofte er dar.
to-the child called he there.

er sprach 'genc und bewar
he said 'go and tend

diss herren phârt, tohter mîn,
this lord's palfrey, daughter mine,

der unser gast geruochet sîn,
who our guest deigns to-be,

und begenc ez sô ze vlîze 320
and tend it so with diligence

daz ich dirs iht verwîze.'
lest I to-thee-of-it at-all reproach.'

sî sprach 'herre, daz tuon ich.'
she said 'lord, that do I.'

der mäge lîp was lobelich.
the maiden's body was praiseworthy.

der roc was grüener varwe,
the gown was of-green color,

gezerret begarwe, 325
torn entirely,

abehære über al.
threadbare over all.

dar under was ir hemde sal
there under was her shift soiled

und ouch zebrochen eteswâ:
and also torn somewhere:

sô schein diu lîch dâ
so shone the flesh there

durch wîz alsam ein swan. 330
through white like a swan.

man sagt daz nie kint gewan
one says that never child got

ein lîp sô gar dem wunsche gelîch:
a body so wholly to-the ideal like:

und wære sî gewesen rîch,
and had she been rich,

so gebræste niht ir lîbe
so would-lack not her body

ze lobelîchem wîbe. 335
to-a praiseworthy woman.

ir lîp schein durch ir salwe wât
her body shone through her dingy clothing

alsam diu lilje, dâ sî stât
like the lily, where it stands

under swarzen dornen wîz.
among black thorns white.

ich wæne got sînen vlîz
I think God his diligence

340 an sî hâte geleit
on her bad laid

von schœne und von sælekeit.
of beauty and of blessedness.

Êrecken muote ir ungemach.
Erec grieved her discomfort.

zuo ir vater er sprach
to her father he spoke

‘wir sulns die juncfrowen erlân:
‘we shall-of-it the young-lady spare:

345 ich wæn siz selten habe getân:
I think she-it seldom has done:

ez zimt mir selbem vil baz.’
it befits me myself much better.’

dô sprach der alte daz.
then said the old-one this.

‘man sol dem wirte lân
‘one shall to-the host leave

sîn willen, daz ist guot getân.
his will, that is well done.

350 uns gebrist der knehte:
to-us lacks of-the servants:

von diu tuot siz mit rehte.’
from that does she-it with right.’

diu juncfrowe des niht enliez

the young-lady of-it not refrained

sine tæte als sî ir vater hiez.

she did as her her father bade.

daz phärt begienc ze vlîze

the palfrey tended with diligence

ir hende vil wîze:

her hands very white:

und wær daz got hien erde rite,

and were that God here-on earth rode,

ich wæn in gnuogte dâ mite,

I think him would-content there with,

ob er solhen marstallære hæte.

if he such groom had.

swie sî schein in swacher wæte,

however she appeared in poor clothing,

sô weiz ich daz wîp noch man

so know I that woman nor man

süezern schiltnieht nie gewan

sweeter shield-bearer ever got

dann Êrec fil de roi Lac.

than Erec son of king Lac.

dô sî sînes phärdes phlac,

when she of-his palfrey took-care,

im zam von solhem knehte

to-him befitted from such servant

sîn fuoter wol mit rehte.

his fodder well with right.

hie wart der gast berâten

here was the guest provided

als sî des state hâten.

as they of-it means had.

guote teppeche gespreit,

good carpets spread,

355

360

365

unde dar ûf geleit
and there upon laid

370 alsô rîchiu bettewât
such rich bedclothes

sô sî diu werlt beste hât,
as it the world best has,

mit samîte bezogen;
with samite covered;

dem daz golt was unerlogen
to-which the gold was genuine

daz daz bette ein man nie möhte erwegen
that the bed one man never could lift

375 und selbe vierde müeste legen;
and himself fourth must lay;

und dar übere gebreit,
and there over spread,

nâch grôzer herren werdekeit,
after great lords' dignity,

kulter von zendâle,
quilts of sendal,

rîche und gemâle, —
rich and painted,—

380 die wâren bî dem fiure
they were by the fire

des âbents vil tiure:
of-the evening very scarce:

si geleisten wol ein reine strô:
they provided well a clean straw:

dar über genuogte sî dô
there over sufficed them then

eines bettes âne vlîz:
of-a bed without diligence:

385 daz bedaht ein lîlach wîz.
that covered a sheet white.

ouch was dâ ritters spîse:

also was there knight's food:

swes ein man vil wîse

whatever a man very wise

möhte in sînem muote

might in his spirit

erdenken ze guote,

devise for good,

des hâten sî überkraft

of-that had they abundance

und vollecliche wirtschaft,

and full hospitality,

doch man es ûf den tisch niht truoc.

yet one of-it upon the table not carried.

in gap der reine wille genuoc

them gave the pure will enough

den man dâ ze hûse vant:

which one there at house found:

wand er ist aller güete ein phant.

for it is of-all goodness a pledge.

390

395

Coralus, and Erec's Suit

III

The narrator explains that the old man, Coralus, was a rich count ruined by war; his wife is Karsinefit, and their daughter Enite is Duke Imain's niece. From him Erec learns that the knight is Iders, son of Niut. Erec asks for armor to contest the sparrowhawk for Enite, promising to marry her if he wins. Coralus, once King Lac's comrade in arms, takes this for mockery, but when Erec swears he means it, he gladly shows him the armor he has kept.

nû mugt ir hœren mære

now may you hear tidings

wer dirre alte wære,

who this old-one were,

daz er den gast sô wol enphie

that he the guest so well received

und ers niht durch sîn armuot lie.

and he-it not for his poverty omitted.

400 er het dâ vor gehabt ê

he had there before had formerly

guotes und ouch êren mê.

of-goods and also of-honors more.

er was ein grâve rîche,

he was a count rich,

vîl gar unlasterlîche

very wholly blamelessly

sîns erbes verstôzen

of-his inheritance expelled

405 von sînen übergênôzen.

by his overlords.

in het dehein sîn bôsheit

him had no his wickedness

in dise armuot geleit:

into this poverty laid:

ez was von urluige komen.

it was from war come.

im het diu überkraft genomen

from-him had the superior-force taken

allez daz er ie gewan.

all that he ever won.

sô vil was dem rîchen man

so much was to-the rich man

grôzer êren niht verlân

of-great honors not left

daz er einen kneht mohte hân.

that he a servant could have.

nû truog er dise armuot

now bore he this poverty

und diu hûsfrouwe guot

and the housewife good

in ir alter mit listen:

in their age with skill:

und swâ sî der habe misten,

and wherever they the goods lacked,

ir nôt sî bedahten

their need they covered

mit zûhten swâ sî mahten,

with courtesy wherever they could,

daz mans iht wurde gewar.

lest one-it at-all should-become aware.

daz ouch ir ie alsô gar

that also to-them ever so wholly

diu armuot oberhant gewan,

the poverty upper-hand got,

daz weste lützel ieman.

that knew little anyone.

410

415

420

dem wirte was diu arbeit

to-the host was the hardship

425 die er von grôzer armuot leit

which he from great poverty suffered

dâ wider süeze als ein mete

there against sweet as a mead

da enegen und im diu schame tete.

there against what to-him the shame did.

der alte wirt hiez Coralus

the old host was-called Coralus

und diu hûsfrouwe sus,

and the housewife thus,

430 Karsinefite,

Karsinefite,

ir tochter Ênîte.

their daughter Enite.

swen dise edeln armen

whom these noble poor-ones

niht wolden erbarmen,

not would move-to-pity,

der was herter danne ein stein.

he was harder than a stone.

435 der juncfrouwen æhein

the young-lady's uncle

was der herzoge Îmâin,

was the duke Imain,

des diu hôchzît solde sîn,

whose the feast should be,

der herre von dem lande.

the lord of the land.

ir burt was âne schande.

her birth was without disgrace.

- nû sagen wir ouch dâ bî
now tell we also there with 440
- von wiu diu rede erhaben sî.
from what the story begun be.
- dô daz phârt was begangen,
when the palfrey was tended,
- ‘nûne lât iuch niht belangen’
‘now let yourself not grow-weary’
- sprach der wirt ze dem gaste.
said the host to the guest.
- Êrecken muote vaste
Erec grieved sorely 445
- sîn schade den er dâ vor gewan:
his harm which he there before got:
- den wirt er frâgen began
the host he to-ask began
- waz der schal von den liuten
what the noise from the people
- möhte bediuten
might signify
- den er in dem markte het gesehen.
which he in the market had seen. 450
- do begunde im der wirt jehn
then began to-him the host to-tell
- wiez umb die rede was getân,
how-it about the matter was done,
- als ich iu gesagt hân,
as I to-you told have,
- beide umb die hôchzît
both about the feast
- und ouch des sparwæres strî.
and also the sparrowhawk’s contest. 455

als er im gesagte daz,
when he to-him told that,

dô frâgte er aber fûrbaz
then asked he again further

von dem ritter mære,
about the knight tidings,

ob er weste wer er wære,
whether he knew who he were,

460 der vor im ûf daz hûs reit,
who before him to the house rode,

als ich iu ê habe geseit,
as I to-you before have said,

und hal in doch sîn ungemach.
and concealed from-him yet his discomfort.

der alte sus sprach,
the old-one thus spoke,

‘in erkennet allez ditze lant;
‘him knows all this land;

465 er ist Îdêrs fil Niut genant:’
he is Iders son-of Niut named:’

und sagte sîn geverte gar
and told his business wholly

unde daz er komen dar
and that he come thither

mit sînêr âmîen wære
with his sweetheart were

ze nemen den sparwære.
to take the sparrowhawk.

470 alsô schiere er ditz vernam,
as soon he this heard,

mit frâge er fûrbaz kam,
with questioning he further came,

unz im der wirt tete erkant
until to-him the host made known

wiez umbin selben was gewant.
how-it about-him self was disposed.

als er ims begarwe jach,
when he to-him-it entirely told,

Êrec stuont unde sprach
Erec stood and spoke

475

‘gnâde, wirt und herre,
‘mercy, host and lord,

daz ez mir iht gewerre.
lest it me at-all harm.

sît ez sô umbiuch stât,
since it so about-you stands,

sô suoche ich helfe unde rât.
so seek I help and counsel.

ûf gnâde sô sî iu bejehen,
upon mercy so be to-you confessed,

480

mir ist ein leit von im geschehen
to-me is a sorrow from him happened

daz ich immer klagen sol,
that I ever lament shall,

ezn sî daz ich michs erhol.
unless-it be that I myself-of-it recover.

sîn getwerc mich harte sêre sluoc;
his dwarf me very sorely struck;

daz ich im durch nôt vertruoc:
that I from-him through need endured:

485

ez was gewâfent unde ich blôz,
it was armed and I bare,

des iz dô benamen genôz.
of-that it then assuredly profited.

grôz laster muostich dô vertragen.
great reproach must-I then bear.

daz sol mîn herze immer klagen,
that shall my heart ever lament,

490 mirn gefüege got noch den tac
unless-to-me grant God yet the day

daz ich ez gerechen mac.
that I it avenge can.

ûf sölher âventiure wân,
upon such adventure's expectation,

als ich nû gesaget hân,
as I now said have,

sô bin ich im her nâch geriten.
so am I him hither after ridden.

495 râtes muoz ich iuch biten.
of-counsel must I you ask.

beide helfe unde heil
both help and weal

stât vil gar âne teil,
stands very wholly without share,

herre, in iuwer hant.
lord, in your hand.

möht ir mir umb îsengwant
might you for-me for armor

500 getuon etlîcher slahte rât
provide of-some kind remedy

(ich sage iu wie mîn muot stât),
(I tell you how my spirit stands),

sô wurde er strîtes niht vermiten
so would-be he of-contest not spared

(mit mîm orse bin ich wol geriten):
(with my horse am I well mounted):

sô soldet ir mich lâzen rîten
so should you me let ride

mit iuwer tohter Ênîten
with your daughter Enite

ûf die selben hôchzît.
to the same feast.

ich behabete den strît
I would-maintain the contest

daz sî schœner wære
that she fairer were

(und næme den sparwære)
(and should-take the sparrowhawk)

danne des ritters friundîn.
than the knight's lady-love.

nû seht ob ez müge sîn
now see if it may be

und tuotz ûf daz gedinge,
and do-it upon the condition,

ob mir alsô gelinge
if to-me so succeed

daz mir der sige belîbe,
that to-me the victory remain,

sô nim ich sî ze wîbe.
so take I her to woman.

dar umbe durfet irz niht lân,
there for need you-it not leave,

sî hât an mir niht missetân,
she has to me not done-wrong,

ez mac wol mit êren sîn.
it may well with honor be.

ich künde iu den vater mîn:
I make-known to-you the father my:

der ist der künec Lac genant.
he is the king Lac named.

505

510

515

520

beide liute unde lant,

both people and land,

lîp und allez daz ich hân

body and all that I have

make ich ir undertân,

make I to-her subject,

daz sî des muoz walten.'

that she of-it must rule.'

525 do begunden dem alten

then began to-the old-one

von jâmer vil tougen

from misery very secretly

truoben diu ougen:

to-dim the eyes:

wan sîn herze wart ermant

for his heart was reminded

mit dirre rede sâ zehant

with this speech straightway at-once

530 daz er kûme für brâhte

that he scarcely forth brought

die rede der er gedâhte.

the speech which he thought.

er sprach 'herre, disen spot

he said 'lord, this mockery

sult ir lâzen durch got.

shall you leave for God.

iwer rede ist vil verlâzenlich.

your speech is very unseemly.

nû hât got über mich

now has God over me

535

verhenget swes er wolde

permitted whatever he would

anders danne ez solde

otherwise than it should

so ist mîn leben nû getân.

so is my life now made.

daz wil ich von gote hân.

that will I from God have.

des gwaltes ist alsô vil,

of-the power is so much,

540

er mac den rîchen swenner wil

he may the rich whenever-he will

dem armen gelîchen

to-the poor liken

und den armen gerîchen.

and the poor enrich.

sîn gwalt ist an mir worden schîn.

his power is on me become evident.

durch got sult ir erbeten sîn

for God shall you entreated be

545

daz dirre schimph belîbe.

that this jest cease.

ir getuot ze wîbe

you do for woman

mîner tohter wol rât,

of-my daughter well without,

wan sî des guotes niht enhât.

for she of-the goods not has.

swie grôzen bresten ich nû dol,

however great want I now suffer,

550

doch sult ir mir gelouben wol,

yet shall you me believe well,

ich hân gesehen den tac

I have seen the day

daz iuwer vater der künec Lac

that your father the king Lac

mich gesellen nande.

me comrade named.

555 wir nâmen in sîm lande

we took in his land

bêde mit ein ander swert.

both with one another sword.

daz ir nû mîner tochter gert,

that you now my daughter ask,

mich entriege mîn wân,

me unless-deceive my expectation,

daz habt ir durch schimph getân.'

that have you for jest done.'

560 Êrec wart von der rede rôt.

Erec became from the speech red.

er sprach 'herre, welch nôt

he said 'lord, what need

twinget iuch ûf den wân

compels you onto the expectation

daz ichz durch schimph habe getân?

that I-it for jest have done?

daz sult ir ûz dem muote lân

that shall you out-of the mind let

565 und mîniu wort für ernest hân.

and my words for earnest have.

waz solde mir iezuo der spot?

what should to-me now the mockery?

jâ bit ich mir sô helfen got

indeed pray I me so help God

ze sêle und ze lîbe,

in soul and in body,

als ich mir ze wîbe

as I for-myself to woman

iwer tohter gerne nemen wil.

your daughter gladly take will.

des gibe ich iu kein langer zil

of-that give I you no longer term

wan an die selben hôchzît,

but to the same feast,

daz sich endet der strît,

that itself ends the contest,

ob mir nû iuwer helfe frumt

if to-me now your help avails

daz mir mîn dinc ze heile kumt.

that to-me my affair to weal comes.

ir armuot hoere ich iuch klagen:

her poverty hear I you lament:

der sult ir stille gedagen.

of-that shall you still be-silent.

ez schadet iu niht gegen mir,

it harms you not with me,

wand ich ir guotes wol enbir.

for I of-her goods well forgo.

ouch het ich einen swachen muot,

also would-have I a base spirit,

næm ich für mînen willen guot.

should-take I for my will goods.

nû gedenket dar zuo.

now think there to.

sît daz der strît sol wesen fruo,

since that the contest shall be early,

sô sûmet uns niht mêre.

so delay us not more.

an iu stêt gar mîn êre:

on you stands wholly my honor:

570

575

580

585

und wizzet rehte âne wân,
and know rightly without doubt,

ich leiste als ich gelobet hân.
I perform as I promised have.'

der alte was der rede frô.
the old-one was of-the speech glad.

‘sît irz meinet alsô,
'since you-it mean so,

590 sô haben wir hie zehant
so have we here at-once

vîl schœnez îsengewant,
very fair armor,

beidiu behende unde guot.
both handy and good.

des kunde mich diu armuot
of-that could me the poverty

noch nie betwingen
yet never compel

595 noch ûf den zwîvel bringen
nor onto the doubt bring

daz ichs wurde âne.
that I-of-it should-become without.

ich behielt ez nâch dem wâne,
I kept it after the expectation,

ob es mînem friunde wurde nôt
if of-it for-my friend should-become need

(der selbe wille mirz gebôt),
(the same will to-me-it commanded),

600 daz ichz im lîhen solde.
that I-it to-him lend should.

unz mîrs got gunnen wolde
while to-me-of-it God grant would

sô het ich ie einen site,
so had I ever a custom,

daz ich im selbe dâ mite

that I to-him myself there with

vil willeclîchen was bereit,

very willingly was ready,

unz mir daz alter an gestreit:

until me the age on conquered:

daz hât mir gar die kraft benomen.

that has from-me wholly the strength taken.

nû ist ez uns ze staten komen,

now is it to-us to advantage come,

daz ez uns fremder bete erlât

that it us of-strange asking spares

und tuot uns unwirde rât.

and does for-us dishonor remedy.

ouch habe ich unz her

also have I until now

beide schilt unde sper

both shield and spear

zesamene behalten.'

together kept.'

des gnâdet er dem alten.

for-that thanked he the old-one.

er bat im ez zeigen dar,

he bade him it show there,

durch daz er næme war

for that he should-take heed

ob ez im recht wære,

whether it him right were,

ze enge noch ze swære.

too narrow nor too heavy.

dô wasez behende unde guot.

then was-it handy and good.

des gwan er vil rîchen muot,

of-that got he very rich spirit,

605

610

615

- 620 Êrec fil de roi Lac.
Erec son of king Lac.
 vil schiere gieng ûf der tac,
very soon went up the day,
 daz sî solden rîten
that they should ride
 hin zuo den hôchzîten.
thither to the feast.

The Sparrowhawk, and the Joust

IV

At dawn they ride to Tulmein, and Duke Imain offers to dress his niece better, but Erec refuses: a woman should be judged by her beauty, not her clothes. After Mass he leads Enite to the sparrowhawk and tells her to take it. Iders mocks them, and the two knights arm, Iders splendidly and Erec in his host's old gear. They break spears in several courses until Erec unhorses Iders with the heavy spear he has saved, and then he dismounts so as not to strike a fallen man.

- dô der tac vol erschein,
when the day fully appeared,
 625 dô riten sî ûf Tulmein.
then rode they up-to Tulmein.
 dô hiez sî duc Îmâin
then bade them duke Imain
 grôze willekomen sîn.
greatly welcome be.
 ir komennes nam in wunder.
of-their coming took him wonder.
 nû nâmen si in besunder
now took they him apart
 630 und sagtn im ir geverte gar,
and told him their business wholly,

war umbe Êrec was komen dar,
what for Erec was come thither,

und bâtn in râtes dar zuo.
and asked him of-counsel there to.

er sprach 'ich sage iu waz ich tuo.
he said 'I tell you what I do.

beide lîp unde guot
both body and goods

unde willeclîcher muot
and willing spirit

sol iu dar zuo sîn bereit,
shall to-you there for be ready,

her gast, durch iuwer frûmekeit
sir guest, for your prowess

und durch mîner nifteln êre.
and for my niece's honor.

ouch volget mîner lêre
also follow my advice

und lât mich sî vazzen baz.'
and let me her dress better.'

Êrec der widerrette daz:
Erec he opposed that:

er sprach 'des sol niht geschehen.
he said 'that shall not happen.

er hete harte missesehen,
he would-have very misjudged,

swer ein wîp erkande
whoever a woman recognized

niuwan bî dem gwande.
only by the clothing.

635

640

645

man sol einem wîbe

one shall in-a woman

kiesen bî dem lîbe

judge by the body

ob sî ze lobe stât,

whether she to praise stands,

unde niht bî der wât.

and not by the clothing.

650 ich lâze ouch hiute schouwen

I let also today behold

ritter unde frouwen,

knights and ladies,

und wær sî nacket sam ein hant

and were she naked as a hand

unde swerzer danne ein brant,

and blacker than a firebrand,

daz mich sper unde swert

that me spear and sword

655 volles lobes an ir wert,

of-full praise on her grant,

od ich verliuse daz leben.'

or I lose the life.'

'got sol iu gelücke geben'

'God shall you luck give'

sprach der herzoge Îmâîn;

said the duke Imain;

'ouch sult ir des gewis sîn

'also shall you of-that sure be

660 daz iuwer ellenthafter muot

that your valiant spirit

iu gefüezet allez guot.'

to-you brings all good.'

mit dirre rede sî kâmen

with this speech they came

dâ sî messe vernâmen

where they mass heard

von dem heiligen geiste:

of the holy spirit:

des phlegent se aller meiste

that practice they of-all most

die ze ritterschefte sinnent

who to knighthood aspire

unde turnieren minnent.

and tourneying love.

dô was bereit der imbîz.

then was ready the meal.

man dienet in en allen vlîz.

one served them in all diligence.

als der dô ergie,

when that then was-over,

menneclîch ze freuden vie

everyone to joy took

dar nâch als in dûhte guot

there after as them seemed good

und in lârte sîn muot.

and them taught their spirit.

ir spil was umbe die stat

their play was around the place

da der sparwær was ûf gesat.

where the sparrowhawk was up set.

665

670

675

nû nâmen se albesunder war
now took they especially heed

wenne Îdêrs fil Niut dar
when Iders son-of Niut thither

mit sîner âmîen kâme
with his sweetheart should-come

und den sparwære nâme,
and the sparrowhawk should-take,

680 als er ouch ê het getân.
as he also before had done.

nû sâhen sî dort zuo gân
now saw they yonder toward come

Êrecken mit frowen Ênîten.
Erec with lady Enite.

er fuorte sî an sîner sîten
he led her at his side

hin da er den sparwære sach.
thither where he the sparrowhawk saw.

685 ze des ritters gehærde er sprach
in the knight's hearing he spoke

‘frouwe, læset diu bant
‘lady, loose the bonds

und nemt den sparwær ûf die hant.
and take the sparrowhawk upon the hand.

wan daz ist wâr âne strît,
for that is true without dispute,

hiest niemen schœner danne ir sît.
here-is no-one fairer than you are.’

690 dem ritter was daz ungemach.
to-the knight was that troublesome.

vil unwirdecliche er sprach
very contemptuously he spoke

‘lât den sparwære stân!
‘let the sparrowhawk stand!

ez sol iu niht sô wol ergân,
it shall to-you not so well turn-out,

ir dürftiginne.
you beggar-woman.

war tuot ir iuwer sinne?
where put you your senses?

lânt in ir der er baz gezeme
leave him to-her whom he better befits

und diu in von rehte neme.
and who him by right should-take.

daz ist hie mîn friundîn:
that is here my lady-love:

der sol er billichen sîn.
to-her shall he rightfully be.'

Êrec sprach 'herre guot kneht,
Erec said 'lord good warrior,

ir habt den sparwær âne reht
you have the sparrowhawk without right

genomen disiu zwei jâr.
taken these two years.

nû wizzet rehte für wâr,
now know rightly for true,

es mac niht mêre geschehen.
of-it may not more happen.

sin welle diemüete jehen,
unless-she will humility confess,

ez muoz undr uns beiden
it must between us both

diu ritterschaft scheiden.
the knighthood decide.'

'jungelinc, ob iu wære
'youngling, if to-you were

der lîp ze ihte mære,
the life at aught dear,

695

700

705

- 710 sô liezet ir enzît
so would-leave you in-time
 iuvern kintlichen strît;
your childish contest;
 wan irn nû schiere wirs lât.
for you-it now soon worse leave.
 sô ez an den lîp gât,
when it to the life goes,
 ich sage iu vor wie iu geschiht.
I tell you beforehand how to-you happens.
- 715 ir erbarmet mir niht:
you move-to-pity me not:
 als ich iu nû gesige an,
when I you now conquer over,
 des ich nie zwîvel gewan,
of-which I never doubt got,
 alsô stêt hin ziu mîn muot
so stands thither toward-you my spirit
 daz ich danne kein guot
that I then no goods
- 720 næme für iuvern lîp.
would-take for your life.
 sweder man oder wîp
whichever man or woman
 iu dise rede gerâten hât,
you this matter advised has,
 der minnet ob iu missegât.
he loves if you it-goes-ill.'
 Êrec sprach 'herre,
Erec said 'lord,
- 725 ich hân mich alsô verre
I have myself so far
 nû der rede ûz getân:
now of-the matter out done:

ich wil ir niht wandel hân.'

I will of-it no change have.'

zehant schieden sî sich dâ

at-once parted they themselves there

unde wâfenten sich sâ,

and armed themselves straightway,

der riter als im wol tohte,

the knight as to-him well befitted,

Êrec als er mohte.

Erec as he could.

Îdêrs was wol worden gar:

Iders was well provided wholly:

wan er hete sich gewarnet dar

for he had himself prepared there

als man ze ritterschefte sol.

as one for knighthood shall.

sîniu sper wârû gevârwet wol;

his spears were painted well;

er was gezimieret;

he was crested;

sîn ros was gezieret

his horse was adorned

mit rîcher covertiure

with rich caparison

(diu was Êrecke tiure);

(that was to-Erec scarce);

sîn wâpenroc alsam was,

his surcoat likewise was,

samît grüene als ein gras,

samite green as a grass,

mit rîchen borten umbestalt;

with rich braids bordered;

730

735

740

als uns diu âventiure zalt

as to-us the adventure told

sô was sîn harnasch lobelîch,

so was his armor praiseworthy,

745 er selbe eim guoten ritter glîch.

he himself to-a good knight like.

Êrec ouch dort zuo reit.

Erec also yonder toward rode.

sîn schilt was alt swære breit,

his shield was old heavy broad,

sîniu sper unbehende grôz,

his spears unhandy great,

halp er und daz ros blôz,

half he and the horse bare,

750 als imz sîn alter sweher lêch

as him-it his old father-in-law lent

und sîner helfe niht verzêch.

and his help not refused.

under al dem liute

among all the people

‘got gebe dir heil hiute’

‘God give thee weal today’

sprach ein gemeiner munt.

said a common mouth.

755 nû rûmde man inz zestunt

now cleared one them-it at-once

ze einem wîten ringe.

to a wide ring.

Êrecke dem jungelinge

to-Erec the youngling

gezam vil wol sîn ritterschaft:

befitted very well his knighthood:

sîn ellen gap im grôze kraft.

his valor gave him great strength.

sî ruorte beide ein grôzer zorn:

them stirred both a great anger:

diu ros sî nâmen mit den sporn:

the horses they took with the spurs:

dô sach man schenkel fliegen.

then saw one shanks fly.

do begunde jenen triegen

then began that-one to-deceive

sîn hôchvertiger wân;

his haughty expectation;

er wânde ein kint bestanden hân.

he thought a child encountered have.

zesamne liezens strîchen.

together let-they charge.

do bevant er wêrlîchen

then perceived he truly

daz Êrec degenes ellen truoc.

that Erecthane's valor bore.

mit der just er im sluoc

with the joust he to-him struck

den schilt an daz houbet.

the shield against the head.

dâ von wart er betoubet

there from was he stunned

daz er kûme gesaz.

that he scarcely stayed-seated.

vil selten geschach im daz.

very seldom happened to-him that.

diu just wart sô krefteclîch

the joust was so mighty

daz diu ros hinder sich

that the horses behind themselves

an die hâhsen gesâzen.

on the haunches sat.

760

765

770

775

der muote was erlâzen

of-the encounter was spared

der riter Îdêrs unz an die stunt:

the knight Iders until at the hour:

dô wart im sî gar kunt.

then became to-him it wholly known.

780 die schefte flugen in von der hant

the shafts flew them from the hand

zerbrochen über des schildes rant.

broken over the shield's rim.

dô von in geliche

then by them equally

vil gar lobeliche

very wholly praiseworthy

wol diu fünfte just ergie,

well the fifth joust passed,

785 daz ir deweder vervâlte nie,

that of-them either missed never,

wan daz sî diu sper ûf stâchen

but that they the spears up thrust

daz sî gar zerbrâchen,

that they wholly broke,

dô het ir Êrec niht mêre.

then had of-them Erec no more.

des gesûmte er sich sêre.

of-it delayed he himself sorely.

790 doch het er daz alte sper

yet had he the old spear

sînes swehers gehalten her

his father-in-law's kept hitherto

unz an die jungesten vart.

until at the last course.

dar umbe het erz dar gespart:

for that had he-it there saved:

grôz und gedigen was der schaft.
great and solid was the shaft.

ouch het er sînes lîbes kraft
also had he his body's strength

vil wol enthalten dar,
very well held-back there,

schône unde vil gar.
fairly and very wholly.

als er daz sper ze hant genam
when he the spear at hand took

(sîn schilt im wol ze halse gezam),
(his shield him well at neck befitted),

er begunde ein wênic rîten
he began a little to-ride

ûz engegen der frowen Ênîten
out toward the lady Enite

da er sî weinende sach.
where he her weeping saw.

über des schildes rant er sprach
over the shield's rim he spoke

‘gehabt iuch wol, guot frouwe magt.
‘bear yourself well, good lady maiden.

ich bin noch vil unverzagt.
I am yet very undismayed.

iwer sorge sol sich enden.’
your care shall itself end.’

daz ros begunde er wenden
the horse began he to-turn

dazz in gegen dem ritter truoc.
that-it him toward the knight carried.

daz sper er ndern arm sluoc.
the spear he under-the arm put.

der ritter im engegen kam,
the knight him toward came,

795

800

805

810

wol gewarnet alsam.

well armed likewise.

sî liezen zsamen strîchen

they let together charge

alsô krefteclîchen

so mightily

sô sî meiste von ir sinnen

as they most by their wits

815 ûz den rossen mohten gwinen.

out-of the horses could get.

sô sêre zsamen sî stâchen

so sorely together they thrust

daz dem ritter brâchen

that to-the knight broke

die darmgürtel beide

the girths both

(do gelebt erm nie sô leide),

(then lived he-himself never so grievous),

820 surzengel und fürbüege.

surcingle and breast-straps.

doch er guot ellen trüege,

though he good valor bore,

Êrec in von dem rosse schiet,

Erec him from the horse parted,

ze spotte aller der diet.

to mockery of-all the people.

als Êrecke dô sô wol geschach

when to-Erec then so well happened

825 daz er den ritter nider stach,

that he the knight down thrust,

von im enthielt er hôher baz.

from him held-back he higher further.

daz tet er umbe daz

that did he for that

daz iemen des möhte jehen

lest anyone of-that might say

daz im diu schande wære geschehen

that to-him the disgrace had happened

daz er in ligende het erslagen.

that he him lying had slain.

830

er wolde bezzer wort bejagen.

he would better report win.

ererbeizte und liez in ûf stân.

he dismounted and let him up stand.

zesamne liezen sî dar gân.

together let they there go.

The Sword Fight with Iders

V

The two fight on foot from morning until well past noon, when they are too tired to strike and Iders proposes a rest. When they resume, Erec remembers the dwarf's blow and looks at Enite, and his strength doubles. He knocks off Iders' helm, and Iders begs for his life. Erec rebukes his arrogance and the dwarf's insolence, and he spares Iders in exchange for a pledge to do whatever he commands.

dô sach man sî vehten

then saw one them fight

glîch zwein guoten knehten.

like two good warriors.

835

daz fiur in ûz den helmen flouc.

the fire to-them out-of the helms flew.

sî vâhten als den liuten touc

they fought as to-the people befits

die es diu grimme nôt bat:

whom of-it the grim need bade:

wan sî hâten gesat

for they had set

840 umbe den sige vil hôhez phant:

for the victory very high pledge:

ez galt ze gebenne dâ zehant

it cost to give there at-once

minre noch mêre

less nor more

wan beide lîp und êre.

but both life and honor.

dem tâten sî vil gelîch.

to-that did they very like.

845 ir vehten was manlîch.

their fighting was manly.

des triben sî vil unde gnuoc,

that drove they much and enough,

unz daz Îdêrs Êrecken sluoc

until that Iders Erec struck

ûf den helm, daz er gie

on the helm, that he went

von dem slage ûf diu knie.

from the blow onto the knees.

850 als diu frouwe Ênîte daz ersach,

when the lady Enite that saw,

grôz wart ir ungemach.

great became her discomfort.

si begunde ir gesellen klagen.

she began her comrade to-lament.

sî wânde er wære erslagen

she thought he were slain

und er belibe des slages dâ.

and he should-remain of-the blow there.

ûf sprang er und begunde sâ
up sprang he and began straightway

855

den schilt ze rücke wenden
the shield to back to-turn

und gap ze beiden henden
and gave to both hands

daz swert mit grimmen muote
the sword with grim spirit

und vaht sam er wuote.
and fought as-if he raged.

er machet in des schildes bar
he made him of-the shield bare

860

und hiun im von der hant gar:
and bewed-it to-him from the hand wholly:

des im vil lützel der vertruoc
of-it him very little he tolerated

der slac engegen slage sluoc.
who blow against blow struck.

sât daz er im entlêch sîn guot,
since that he from-him borrowed his goods,

daz galt er als jener tuot
that repaid he as that-one does

865

der dâ mêre entnemen wil.
who there more borrow will.

sî bêde spilten ein spil
they both played a game

daz lihte den man beroubet,
that easily the man robs,

der fünfzehn ûf daz houbet.
the fifteen upon the head.

ouch wurdens eteswenne gegeben
also were-they sometimes given

870

beidiu dâ für und ouch da eneben.
both there before and also there beside.

mit grimme sî verbunden.

with grimness they wagered.

einer ellenlanger wunden

of-an ell-long wound

möhter vil wol bekomen

might-be very well get

875 der daz phantreht solte hân genomen.

who the pledge-right should have taken.

dâ wart vil manec gebot geleit

there was very many-a bid laid

und dem ein widergelt geseit.

and to-that a counter-payment told.

ir ietweder wolt ez lâzen,

of-them each would it leave,

wan dem wære verwâzen

but to-him were forfeit

880 beidiu sîn êre und ouch daz leben.

both his honor and also the life.

dar nâch sô wart daz spil gegeben

there after so was the game given

mit manegem fiurînen slage

with many-a fiery blow

von fruo unz hin nâch mittem tage,

from early until on after mid day,

daz in der gebote zeran

that them of-the bids failed

885 sô sêre daz die zwêne man

so sorely that the two men

muoden begunden.

to-tire began.

sî mohten noch enkunden

they could or could

ir bot mit kreften niht gewegen

their bid with strength not weigh

noch die arme alsô erwegen

or the arms so raise

als sî tâten unze dar.

as they did until then.

890

nû hâten sî sich alsô gar

now had they themselves so wholly

erwüetet unde ervohten

raged-out and fought-out

daz sî niht mêre mohten.

that they not more could.

ir slege wîplîchen sigen:

their blows womanishly sank:

sô gar wâren sî erwigen

so wholly were they exhausted

895

daz dâ von niht schaden geschach.

that there from no harm happened.

Îdêrs dô ze Êrecke sprach

Iders then to Erec spoke

‘enthalt dich, edel ritter guot.

‘restrain thyself, noble knight good.

wir velschen beide ritters muot

we falsify both knight’s spirit

dâ mit und wir ie mitten tuon:

there with which we now meanwhile do:

900

ez ist sunder prîs und âne ruon.

it is without praise and without renown.

unser blœdez vehten

our feeble fighting

gezimt niht guoten knehten.

befits not good warriors.

unser slege gênt niht manlîchen,
our blows go not manfully,

905 wir vehten lasterlîchen.
we fight shamefully.

ob ez iuwer muot niht vervât
if it your spirit not takes

für zageheit, sô ist mîn rât
for cowardice, so is my counsel

daz wir ditz blæde vehten lân
that we this feeble fighting leave

und eine wîle ruowen gân.'
and a while rest go.'

910 dô was Êrec der rede frô.
then was Erec of-the speech glad.

ze ruowe sâzen sî dô.
to rest sat they then.

ir houbet sî enbunden.
their heads they unbound.

und als sî des enphunden
and when they of-it perceived

daz sî geruowet hâten,
that they rested had,

915 zesamne si dô trâten
together they then stepped

und griffen an ir altez spil,
and seized upon their old game,

als ich iu nû sagen wil.
as I to-you now tell will.

mit guoter kunst, mit niuwer kraft
with good skill, with new strength

und mit alsô glîcher meisterschaft
and with so equal mastery

920 sî spilende beliben.
they playing remained.

dâ si ez vil lange getriben,
there they it very long pursued,

daz witzige und tumbē,
that wise and foolish,

die stuonden dar umbe,
who stood there around,

mit nihte erkiesen kunden
by nothing discern could

weder zuo den stunden
which at the hours

eines ougen wæger hæte.
of-an eye better had.

ditz beleip lange stæte:
this remained long steady:

wederm geuele der gewin,
to-which should-fall the gain,

des was zwîvel under in;
of-that was doubt among them;

unz daz Êrec der junge man
until that Erec the young man

begunde denken dar an
began to-think there on

waz im ûf der heide
what to-him on the heath

ze schanden und ze leide
to disgrace and to sorrow

von sîme getwerge geschach.
from his dwarf happened.

und als er dar zuo an sach
and when he there toward at looked

die schoenen frowen Ênîten,
the fair lady Enite,

daz half im vaste strîten:
that helped him greatly to-fight:

925

930

935

wan dâ von gewan er dô
for there from got he then

sîner krefte rehte zwô.
his strength right twofold.

940 ûf den helm er verbant
upon the helm he waged

mit vil williger hant.
with very willing hand.

doch jener die besten wûrfe warf
though that-one the best throws threw

der kein zabelære bedarf,
which any board-player needs,

dô half disen daz er in nie
then helped this-one that he him never

945 ûz den slegen komen lie,
out-of the blows come let,

und gwan ez eine wîle
and gained it a while

sô sêre mit der île,
so sorely with the haste,

unz er doch daz spil verlôs
until he yet the game lost

und gelac vor im sigelôs.
and lay before him victoryless.

950 sînen geiselslac er rach.
his whip-blow he avenged.

als erm den helm abe brach,
when he-him the helm off broke,

dô lôsterm ouch daz hûetelîn
then loosed-be-him also the coif

als er solde erslagen sîn,
as he should slain be,

wan daz er dô geruochte

but that he then deigned

daz er genâde suochte.

that he mercy sought.

955

‘durch got, erbarme dich,

for God, pity thyself,

edel ritter, über mich.

noble knight, over me.

êre an mir elliu wîp

honor in me all women

unde lâz mir den lîp

and let to-me the life

und gedenke dar an

and think there on

960

daz ich dir, tugenthafter man,

that I to-thee, virtuous man,

solch herzenleit niht hân getân,

such heart-sorrow not have done,

dû maht mich wol bî leben lân.’

thou mayst me well in life let.’

des antwurt im Êrec dô.

to-that answered him Erec then.

er sprach ‘wie redet ir nû sô?

he said ‘how speak you now so?’

965

ir spottent mîn âne nôt.

you mock me without need.

jâ wolt ir niuwan mînen tôt:

indeed wanted you only my death:

sô stüende iuch ze ringe

so would-stand you too lightly

iuwer fûrgedinge

your boast

und iuwer grôzer übermuot.

and your great arrogance.

970

jâ næmet ir dehein guot
indeed would-take you no goods

an disem strîte für mîn leben.
in this contest for my life.

doch hât mir got die sælde gegeben
yet has to-me God the fortune given

daz sich diu rede verkêret hât:
that itself the matter reversed has:

975 seht, nû getuon ich guoten rât
see, now take I good counsel

daz ich deheine miete
that I no payment

für mînen lîp biete:
for my life offer:

swie mirn got anderswâ bewar,
however to-me-it God elsewhere protect,

ich bins vor iu sicher gar.
I am-of-it from you safe wholly.

980 hetent ir iuwer hôchvart
had you your haughtiness

ein lützel baz an mir bewart,
a little better toward me guarded,

seht, daz wære iu nû guot.
see, that were to-you now good.

nû hât iuch iuwer übermuot
now has you your arrogance

hiute hie gevellet
today here filled

985 und dem schaden gesellet.
and to-the harm joined.'

er sprach 'wie meinet ir daz?
he said 'how mean you that?

ich gediente nie iuwarn haz,
I deserved never your hatred,

wande ich iuch nie mêre gesach.'

for I you never before saw.'

Êrec aber dô sprach

Erec again then spoke

'nû schamt iuch durch mîne betē,

'now be-ashamed yourself for my request,

als ich mich gester tete,

as I myself yesterday did,

dô ich von iuvern schulden

when I through your fault

die schame muoste dulden

the shame had-to endure

diu mînem herzen nâhen gie.

which my heart near went.

ouch geheize ich iu hie

also promise I you here

daz iu iwers getwerges tuht

that you your dwarf's manners

und sîn grôziu unzuht

and his great discourtesy

nimmer alsô vil gefrunt

never so much profits

sôs iu ze schaden hiute kumt.'

as-it you to harm today comes.'

der ritter aber dô sprach

the knight again then spoke

'geschach iu ie ungemach

'(if)-happened to-you ever discomfort

von mînen schulden, deist mir leit.

from my fault, that-is to-me grievous.

990

995

1000

ouch hât mich iuwer frûmekeit

also has me your prowess

der selben schulde hie ze stat

of-the same guilt here on-the spot

1005 wol ze buoze gesat.

well to amends set.

nu geruochet mir den lîp lân.

now deign to-me the life leave.

und habe ich iht des getân

and (if)-have I anything of-that done

des ich von rehte engelten sol,

for-which I by right pay shall,

daz widerdiene ich harte wol.'

that repay I very well.'

1010 Êrec erbarmde sich dô:

Erec had-pity himself then:

zuo dem ritter sprach er sô,

to the knight spoke he thus,

'nû wil ich iuch leben lân:

'now will I you live let:

des hetet ir mir niht getân.'

that would-have you for-me not done.'

nû gap er im des sicherheit

now gave he him of-that surety

1015 daz er im wære bereit

that he to-him were ready

ze leisten swaz ern hieze,

to perform whatever he-him should-bid,

daz er in leben lieze.

that he him live should-let.

The Dwarf Punished, and the White Stag

VI

Erec orders Iders to submit to the queen, and he has the dwarf Maliclisier stretched on a table and beaten with switches rather than lose a hand. Erec names himself and says he will follow the next day. Meanwhile at Kardigan, King Arthur has caught the stag and wants to claim the kiss that goes with it, but the queen tells him how Erec was whipped and asks him to wait until the next morning.

als diu sicherheit was getân,

when the surety was done,

dô hiez er in ûf stân.

then bade he him up stand.

und als sî zuo den stunden

and when they at the hours

ir houbet beide enbunden,

their heads both unbound,

er sprach 'nû sult ir mich gewern,

he said 'now shall you me grant,

des enwil ich niht enbern,

of-that will I not forgo,

ezn müez mîn frowe diu künegîn

it must my lady the queen

wider ir laster gêret sîn.

against her reproach honored be.

ir butent ir grôz ungemach,

you offered her great discomfort,

daz ir nie leider geschach:

that to-her never more-grievous happened:

wider sî sô habent ir vil getân.

against her so have you much done.

des sult ir ze buoze stân:

for-that shall you to amends stand:

1020

1025

- 1030 wande siz vil sêre klaget.
for she-it very sorely laments.
- iwer getwerc sluog ir maget
your dwarf struck her maiden
- gester umbe dise zît:
yesterday about this time:
- ouch sluog ez mich alsam sît
also struck it me likewise after
- daz ich disiu mâl gewan.
that I these welts got.
- 1035 seht, ich binz der selbe man.
see, I am-it the same man.
- ouch het ich iu immer nâch geriten
also would-have I you ever after ridden
- ê ir des wæret vermiten
before you of-it were spared
- ich wurde an iu gerochen.
I should-become on you avenged.
- daz ich bin sus zebrochen
that I am thus battered
- 1040 under mînen ougen
under my eyes
- (jan mugt irs niht gelougen)
(indeed may you-of-it not deny)
- und daz iwer getwerc ie
and that your dwarf ever
- solhe unzuht begie
such discourtesy committed
- daz ez die magt hât geslagen,
that it the maiden has struck,
- 1045 daz enwil ich niht vertragen:
that will I not tolerate:
- von rehte sol ez garnen daz.
by right shall it pay-for that.

unde sage iu umbe waz:

and tell you about what:

dâ tet im sîn unzuht sô wol

there did to-it its discourtesy so well

daz man ims lônén sol.

that one to-it-it reward shall.

ich wil mich ûz der ahte lân,

I will myself out-of the account leave,

1050

ez soltz der magt niht haben getân.

it should-it to-the maiden not have done.

ich wil von disem hunde ein phant,

I want from this hound a pledge,

daz ist niuwan sîn hant,

that is only its hand,

daz ez ie mêtê

that it ever more

baz frouwen êre.

better ladies honor.

1055

daz hâte doch der guote

that had yet the good-one

niht in sînem muote

not in his spirit

daz er alsô tuon solde,

that he so do should,

wan daz er gerne wolde

but that he gladly would

daz getwerc warnen dâ mite

the dwarf warn there with

1060

dazz ez dar nâch vermite:

that-it it there after should-avoid:

und liez ez âne grôze bete

and let it without great entreaty

daz er im des niht entete.

that he to-it that not did.

doch rach erz ze rehte:

yet avenged he-it to right:

1065 er hiez ez zwêne knehte

he bade it two servants

ûf einen tisch strecken

upon a table stretch

unde wol durchrecken

and well beat-through

mit guoten spizholzen zwein,

with good switches two,

daz ez ûf sînem rücke schein

that it upon its back showed

1070 dar nâch wol zwelf wochen.

there after well twelve weeks.

sîn unzuht wart gerochen

its discourtesy was avenged

daz daz bluot ab im ran.

that the blood from it ran.

nu begunde wîp unde man

now began woman and man

under in gmeinlichen jehen

among them commonly to-declare

1075 im wære gar sîn reht geschehen,

to-it had wholly its due happened,

sît manz in solher unzuht vant.

since one-it in such discourtesy found.

ez was Maliclisier genant.

it was Maliclisier named.

Êrec dô ze dem ritter sprach

Erec then to the knight spoke

(sîn twelen was im ungemach)

(his tarrying was to-him troublesome)

‘nune weiz ich wes ir bîtent

‘now-not know I why you wait

1080

daz ir niht rîtent

that you not ride

ze mîner frowen der kûnegîn.

to my lady the queen.

ir soldet nû geriten sîn.

you should now ridden be.

in ir gwalt sult ir iuch ergeben

into her power shall you yourself surrender

und lebt swie si iuch heize leben.

and live however she you bid live.

1085

sagt ir rehte wer ir sît,

tell to-her rightly who you are,

unde umb unseren strît,

and about our contest,

und wer iuch dar zir habe gesant.

and who you thither to-her have sent.

alsô bin ich genant,

thus am I named,

Êrec fil de roi Lac.

Erec son of king Lac.

1090

ich kume morgen, ob ich mac.

I come tomorrow, if I can.

ich rîte ze mîner wîle:

I ride at my leisure:

dar sint niuwan siben mîle.

there are only seven miles.

nu gedenkt an iuwer sicherheit.’

now think on your surety.’

- 1095 der ritter dô enwec reit,
the knight then away rode,
 er und sîn friundîn
he and his lady-love
 unde daz getwergelîn,
and the little-dwarf,
 gegen dem kûnege Artûse.
toward the king Artbur.
 nû waser ze sînem hûse
 now was-he to his house
- 1100 wider entwichen in daz lant
back withdrawn into the land
 (daz was Kardigân genant),
(that was Kardigan named),
 dô der hîrz was gejaget,
when the stag was hunted,
 als iu ê ist gesaget.
as to-you before is said.
 nû was ez alsô ergangen
now was it so happened
- 1105 daz den hîrz hete gevangen
that the stag had caught
 der kûnec Artûs mit sîner hant.
the king Artbur with his hand.
 daz reht daz dâ von wart benant
the right that there from was named
 daz was im gefallen,
that was to-him fallen,
 daz er ndern mägden allen
that he among-the maidens all
- 1110 eine küssen solde,
one kiss should,
 swelhe er wolde.
whichever he would.

dô er ze Kardigân was komen,
when he to Kardigan was come,

dô wolt der künec hân genomen
then would the king have taken

sîn reht nâch der gwonheit.
his right after the custom.

do ez ir ze rehte wart geseit,
when it to-her to right was told,

1115

dô bat in diu künegîn
then asked him the queen

daz ez gefristet müese sîn
that it postponed must be

unz si im gesagte mære
until she to-him told tidings

wie ez ergangen wære
how it happened were

und waz ir geschach ze leide
and what to-her happened to sorrow

1120

von dem ritter ûf der heide:
from the knight on the heath:

und sagete im vil rehte wie
and told him very rightly how

ez ir des selben tages ergie.
it to-her of-the same day went.

sî sprach 'geselle, ich wil dir klagen:
she said 'comrade, I will to-thee lament:

sus und sô wart mîn magt geslagen
thus and so was my maiden struck

1125

und Êrec fil de roi Lac.
and Erec son of king Lac.

umbe den selben geiselslac

for the same whip-blow

schiet er vor leide

departed he for sorrow

von mir ûf der heide.

from me on the heath.

1130 er sprach 'geloubet, frouwe mîn,

he said 'believe, lady my,

ich wil iu immer fremde sîn

I will to-you ever strange be

ze Britanje in dem lande,

in Britain in the land,

ichn reche mîne schande.

unless-I avenge my disgrace.

und ob ich mich errechen mac,

and if I myself avenge can,

1135 sô kume ich über den dritten tac.'

so come I by the third day.'

herre, der ist morgen.

lord, that is tomorrow.

gedingen unde sorgen

hope and care

hân ich umbe den jungelinc,

have I about the youngling,

wie nû stên sîniu dinc.

how now stand his affairs.

1140 ich mohte in nie erwenden.

I could him never turn-aside.

got welle in uns senden.

God will him to-us send.

geselle, nû bit ich dich

comrade, now ask I thee

durch sîne liebe und durch mich

for his love and for me

daz dû dîns rehtes niht ennemest

that thou thy right not takest

ê daz dû danne vernemest

before that thou then hearest

wie im sîn dinc ergangen sî.

how to-him his affair gone be.

mir wære liep, er wære ouch bî.

to-me were dear, he were also by.

nû bît niuwan unz morgen fruoz:

now wait only until tomorrow early;

gelinget im, er kumt dar zuo.'

(if)-succeeds to-him, he comes there to.'

1145

Iders Before the Queen

VII

From the castle Gawain and Keii see a knight approaching, and the queen guesses from his battered shield that he has either killed Erec or been sent by him. Iders kneels before her with his lady and the dwarf. He confesses his arrogance and says that Erec defeated him and will arrive the next day with a maiden fairer than any. Arthur and the court rejoice at Erec's first victory, and the queen makes Iders a member of her household.

disiu bete was getân

this request was made

ûf dem hûs ze Kardigân.

on the house at Kardigan.

dô het Wâlwan und der friunt sîn,

then had Walwan and the friend his,

1150

der truhsæze Keiûn,

the steward Keiûn,

sich ze handen gevangen

themselves to hands taken

1155 unde wâren gegangen

and were gone

niulîch von den frouwen

newly from the ladies

für daz kastel schouwen.

before the castle to-look.

beide sî dô sâhen

both they then saw

disen ritter gâhen

this knight hasten

1160 verre ûz dem walde.

far out-of the forest.

nû tâten siz balde

now made they-it quickly

der kûneginne kunt.

to-the queen known.

ûf stuont sî zestunt:

up stood she at-once:

ir frouwen sî zuo ir nam,

her ladies she to her took,

1165 an ein venster sî kam,

to a window she came,

daz sî war næme

that she heed should-take

wer dâ geriten kæme.

who there ridden should-come.

dâ stuont sî und diu ritterschaft

there stood she and the knighthood

bî ein ander zwîvelhaft

by one another doubtful

wer der ritter möhte sîn.

who the knight might be.

1170

dô sprach diu kûnegîn

then said the queen

‘ez ist benamen der man,

‘it is assuredly the man,

als ich verre kiesen kan

as I far discern can

und als mir mîn gemüete seit,

and as to-me my spirit says,

dem Êrec dô nâch reit.

whom Erec then after rode.

1175

nû seht, ir sint drîe:

now see, of-them are three:

daz getwerc und sîn âmîe

the dwarf and his sweetheart

rîtent mit im dort her:

ride with him yonder hither:

ez ist nieman wan er.

it is no-one but he.

jâ vert er sam er rîte

indeed fares he as-if he rode

1180

ûz einem strîte.

out-of a fight.

ez mag iu dâ bî sîn erkant,

it may to-you there by be known,

im ist der schilt unz an die hant

to-him is the shield until at the hand

vil nâch verhouwen gar,

very nearly backed wholly,

- 1185 sîn harnasch aller bluotvar.
bis armor all blood-colored.
 ich wil iu zewâre sagen,
I will to-you truly say,
 er hât Êrecken erslagen
he has Erec slain
 und ist durch ruom her komen
and is for boasting hither come
 daz er den sige hât genomen.
that he the victory has taken.
- 1190 od er hât den ritter gesant
or he has the knight sent
 sigelôsen in ditz lant
victoryless into this land
 durch unsers hoves êre:
for our court's honor:
 des gedinge ich sêre.'
of-that hope I sorely.'
 nû jâhens alle der kûnegîn,
now agreed-they all with-the queen,
- 1195 der eintwederz möhte sîn.
of-which one-or-other might be.
 ê diu rede wære getân,
 before the speech were done,
 Îdêrs ûf Kardigân
Iders onto Kardigan
 gegenwürtic über den hof reit
presently across the court rode
 zeinem steine, der was breit,
to-a stone, which was broad,
- 1200 ein wênic ûf an eine stat
a little up at a place
 vor der grêde gesat.
before the steps set.

der was gemachet ûf dem hûs
which was made on the house

daz der künec Artûs
that the king Artbur

da erbeizte unde ouch ûf saz.
there dismounted and also up sat.

der riter gedâhte wâ er baz
the knight thought where he better

erbeizen möhte danne ouch dâ:
dismount might than also there:

bî dem steine erbeizter sâ.
by the stone dismounted-be straightway.

als man in diu ros enphie,
when one from-him the horses received,

mit dem getwerge er dô gie
with the dwarf he then went

und mit sîner friundîn
and with his lady-love

mit zûhten für die künegîn.
with courtesy before the queen.

diu bôt im hêrlîchen gruoz.
who offered him lordly greeting.

nû viel er ir an den fuoz,
now fell he to-her at the foot,

er sprach 'frouwe rîche,
he said 'lady mighty,

nu enphâhet gnædeclîche
now receive graciously

in iwer gewalt einen man
into your power a man

dem got keiner êren gan.
to-whom God no honors grants.

den ich dâ meine daz bin ich.
whom I there mean that am I.

1205

1210

1215

wider iuch vergâhte ich mich.

against you rushed I myself.

1220 des entwanc mich kein nô,

to-that compelled me no need,

wan daz mirz mîn schalkheit gebôt.

but that to-me-it my wickedness commanded.

des sol ich iu ze buoze stân:

for-that shall I to-you to amends stand:

wan ich dar an gevolget hân

for I there in followed have

tumbes herzen râte.

foolish heart's counsel.

1225 nû riwet ez mich ze spâte.

now rues it me too late.

jâ warne ich mich ze unzît,

indeed warn I myself too late,

sam der hase so er in dem netze lît:

like the hare when it in the net lies:

des ist mîn riuwe worden breit.

of-that is my rue become broad.

ez ist et als man dâ seit,

it is just as one there says,

1230 daz unrechter hôchmuot

that wrongful arrogance

dem manne lîhte schaden tuot.

to-the man easily harm does.

des hân ich mich enstanden

of-that have I myself understood

nâch grôzen mînen schanden

after great my disgraces

und bins an ein ende komen:

and am-it to an end come:

wand er hât mir nâch benomen
for he has from-me nearly taken

1235

zuo den êren daz leben.
besides the honors the life.

ich wil mich schuldic geben.
I will myself guilty give.

iu ist von mir geschehen leit.
to-you is from me happened sorrow.

ich binz der iu widerreit
I am-it who you opposed

gester ûf der heide.
yesterday on the heath.

1240

daz ist mir komen ze leide
that is to-me come to sorrow

daz ich die unzuht vertruoc
that I the discourtesy tolerated

daz mîn getwerc die maget sluoc.
that my dwarf the maiden struck.

der unfuore umbe den geiselslac
for-the misconduct about the whip-blow

hât mich Êrec fil de roi Lac
has me Erec son of king Lac

1245

wol ze buoze gesat,
well to amends set,

als in mîn wâriu schulde bat.
as him my true guilt bade.

er gewielt mir mit sîner hant
he mastered me with his hand

und hât mich, frouwe, her gesant,
and has me, lady, hither sent,

- 1250 daz ich der selben schulde
that I of-the same guilt
 gewinne iuwer hulde
win your favor
 und gar in iuwer dienstē stê.
and wholly in your service stand.
 dannoch sage ich iu mē:
moreover tell I to-you more:
 ir durft umb in niht sorgen:
you need about him not worry:
- 1255 er kumt iu selbe morgen
he comes to-you himself tomorrow
 und bringet mit im eine maget
and brings with him a maiden
 daz iu nieman ensaget
that to-you no-one says
 daz er kein schœner habe gesehen,
that he any fairer has seen,
 ern müeze der wârheite jehen.
unless-he must the truth declare.'

von disen mæren wurden dô	1260
<i>from these tidings became then</i>	
vil herzelichen frô	
<i>very heartily glad</i>	
Artûs und diu kûnegîn	
<i>Arthur and the queen</i>	
und lobtens unsern trehtîn	
<i>and praised-for-it our Lord</i>	
daz im alsô jungen	
<i>that to-him so young</i>	
sô schône was gelungen	1265
<i>so fairly was succeeded</i>	
und daz im sîn êrstiu ritterschaft	
<i>and that to-him his first knighthood</i>	
mit lobelîcher heiles kraft	
<i>with praiseworthy weal's strength</i>	
iedoch alsô gar ergie:	
<i>nevertheless so wholly passed:</i>	
wan er begundes vor nie.	
<i>for he began-it before never.</i>	
oder ez wære	1270
<i>unless it were</i>	
gar ein nîdære,	
<i>wholly an envier,</i>	
sô truog im dâ niemen haz.	
<i>so bore him there no-one hatred.</i>	
ez wart nie man geminnet baz	
<i>it was never man loved better</i>	
von einem ingesinde:	
<i>by a household:</i>	

- 1275 wande er hetez von kinde
for he had-it from childhood
 umbe sî gedienet sô
toward them deserved so
 daz sî des alle wâren frô.
that they of-it all were glad.
 zuo dem ritter sprach diu künegîn
to the knight said the queen
 ‘iwer buoze diu sol ringer sîn
‘your penance that shall lighter be
- 1280 danne ir doch gearnet hât.
than you yet deserved have.
 ich wil daz ir hie bestât
I will that you here stay
 und unser ingesinde sît.’
and our household be.’
 daz muoste ouch wesen âne strît.
that must also be without dispute.
 alsô diu rede geschach,
when the speech happened,
- 1285 der künec zuo den rittern sprach
the king to the knights spoke
 ‘nû suln wir in ze lône
‘now shall we him as reward
 enphâhen vil schône.
receive very fairly.
 wir suln mit rehte einem man
we shall with right to-a man
 der ez sô wol gedienen kan
who it so well deserve can
- 1290 aller êren gunnen.
all honors grant.

er hât es wol begunnen

he has of-it well begun

daz er ze lobenne sol geschehen.'

that he to praising shall come.'

des gunden sî dô alle jehen.

to-that began they then all to-agree.

Imain's Feast, and the Palfrey

VIII

At Tulmein everyone praises Erec, Imain disarms him, and Enite shyly lets him rest in her lap. Erec stays with his poor host rather than the duke and promises to make Coralus rich. The next morning he again refuses fine clothes for Enite but accepts a white palfrey, described at length, from her kinswoman. Enite parts from her parents in tears, and alone on the heath the two ride together, exchanging glances as their love grows.

dô ez alsô was komen,

when it so was come,

als ir dâ vor habt vernomen,

as you there before have heard,

daz Êrecke sô wol gelanc

that to-Erec so well succeeded

daz er Îdêrs betwanc

that he Iders overcame

ûf dem hûs ze Tulmein,

on the house at Tulmein,

der ie ein wârer degen schein,

who ever a truethane appeared,

und dô diu frouwe Ênîte

and when the lady Enite

behertet wart mit strîte,

gained was with fighting,

1295

1300

sîns gelückes wâren dô

of-his luck were then

vil herzenlîche frô

very heartily glad

arme unde rîche,

poor and rich,

1305 und jâhen algelîche,

and said all-alike,

dâ wære kein zwîvel an,

there were no doubt about,

er wære der tiuriste man

he were the worthiest man

der ie kâme in daz lant.

who ever came into the land.

dâ was nieman zehant

there was no-one at-once

1310 dem sîn sige wære leit:

to-whom his victory were grievous:

sî prîsten sîne manheit:

they praised his manhood:

ir spil begundens mêren

their play began-they to-increase

dô ze sînen êren.

then to his honors.

grôz buhurt huop sich dâ,

great buhurt raised itself there,

1315 unde tanzen anderswâ.

and dancing elsewhere.

in entwâfent duc Îmâin:

him disarmed duke Imain:

in ir schôz leit in

in her lap laid him

daz kint frouwe Ênîte

the child lady Enite

ze ruowe nâch dem strîte.

to rest after the fight.

ir gebærde was vil bliuchlîch,

her bearing was very shy,

1320

einer mägde gelîch.

to-a maiden like.

sî gerette im niht vil mite:

she talked him not much with:

wan daz ist ir aller site

for that is of-them all custom

daz sî zem êrsten schamec sint

that they at-the first bashful are

unde blûc sam diu kint.

and shy like the children.

1325

dar nâch ergrîfent sî den list

there after grasp they the art

daz sî wizen waz in guot ist,

that they know what to-them good is,

und daz in liep wære

and that to-them dear were

daz sî nû dunket swære,

what them now seems heavy,

unde daz sî næmen,

and that they would-take,

1330

swâ sis rehte bekæmen,

wherever they-of-it rightly came-upon,

einen kus für einen slac

a kiss for a blow

und guote naht für übeln tac.

and good night for bad day.

dô bat in duc Îmâin

then asked him duke Imain

1335 daz er die naht geruochte sîn

that he the night deigned to-be

mit im durch alle minne

with him for all love

mit sîner friundinne,

with his lady-love,

und bat es ouch den geswîen.

and asked of-it also the brother-in-law.

des gunde in Êrec verziên:

of-that began them Erec to-refuse:

1340 sus antwurt er im dô

thus answered he him then

'herre, wie tæte ich danne sô,

'lord, how would-do I then so,

solt ich mînen wirt lân,

should I my host leave,

der mir vil guotes hât getân?

who to-me very-much good has done?

er enphienc mich gester,

he received me yesterday,

1345 er und iuwer swester,

he and your sister,

in grôzer unkûnde wol

in great strangeness well

und sô daz ich ez dienen sol;

and so that I it repay shall;

ich weiz wol, baz enmohter.

I know well, better could-be-not.

er gap mir sîne tohter.

he gave me his daughter.

1350 durch daz sô lât ez âne zorn.

for that so let it without anger.

er wirt von mir sô niht verborn.

he will-be by me so not forsaken.

solt ich nû von im wenken,

should I now from him turn,

sô möht er wol gedenken

so might he well think

er engulte sîner armuot,

he paid-for his poverty,

des er, weizgot, niene tuot.

which he, God-knows, not-at-all does.

ich sol mit im vil gerne sîn.

I shall with him very gladly be.

mîn stæter wille wirt im schîn.

my constant will becomes to-him evident.

und suln wir leben halbez jâr,

and (if)-shall we live half year,

ich mache in rîche, daz ist wâr,

I make him rich, that is true,

mirn gebreste des guotes:

unless-to-me lack of-the goods:

mir zerinnest niht des muotes

to-me runs-out not of-the spirit

ich enbringe in ûf die vart

I bring him onto the way

daz er nie rîcher wart.'

that he never richer became.'

dô sprach der herzoge Îmâin

then said the duke Imain

'sît ir bî mir niht wellet sîn,

'since you with me not will be,

sô sulen wir bî iu bestên,

so shall we with you stay,

mit iu ze herbergen gên.'

with you to lodging go.'

1355

1360

1365

des gnâdet im vil verre
for-that thanked him very greatly

Êrec der herre,
Erec the lord,

1370 und sîn sweher tet alsô.
and his father-in-law did likewise.

ûf stuonden sî dô.
up stood they then.

bî handen sî sich viengen,
by hands they each-other took,

ze herberge sî giengen
to lodging they went

und fuorten die frowen Ênîten
and led the lady Enite

1375 dâ enzwischen an ir sîten.
there between at their side.

dô het sî wûnnen genuoc,
then had she delights enough,

wan sî ûf ir hant truoc
for she upon her hand bore

den gwonnen sparwære:
the won sparrowhawk:

daz was freudebære.
that was joy-bearing.

1380 sus hâte diu magt
thus had the maiden

sæleclîche bejagt
blessedly gained

von lobe michel êre:
of praise great honor:

doch freute sî sich mêre

yet gladdened she herself more

von schulden ir lieben man,

with reason her dear man,

den sî des tages dô gewan.

whom she of-the day then won.

1385

Îmâin, den freuden nie verdrôz,

Imain, whom of-joys never wearied,

des kurzwîle was vil grôz.

whose pastime was very great.

zen herbergen was grôzer schal:

at-the lodgings was great noise:

dâ muoste er geste âne zal,

there must be guests without number,

ritter unde frouwen,

knights and ladies,

1390

den âbent schouwen:

the evening behold:

wande sî ladeten gar

for they invited wholly

alle die et kômen dar

all who just came thither

zuo den hôchzîten.

to the feast.

der vater frowen Ênîten

the father of-lady Enite

1395

môht ez niht erziuget hân:

could it not supplied have:

ez muoste an dem herzogen stân.

it must upon the duke stand.

von sînem hûse man dar truoc

from his house one thither bore

spîse ebene genuoc.

food quite enough.

1400 als im erschein der ander tac,
when to-him appeared the second day,

Êrec fil de roi Lac

Erec son of king Lac

der wolde dâ niht langer tweln.

he would there not longer tarry.

sîn unmuoze begunder zeln

his business began-he to-tell

unde sprach er müeste rîten

and said he must ride

1405 und füeren die frowen Ênîten.

and lead the lady Enite.

dô bat in ir œhein,

then asked him her uncle,

der herzoge von Tulmein,

the duke of Tulmein,

daz er sî müeste vazzen baz:

that he her might dress better:

Êrec der widerrette daz.

Erec he opposed that.

1410 golt und silber er im bôt;

gold and silver he him offered;

er sprach des wære im unnôt:

he said of-that were to-him no-need:

beide ros unde gewant;

both horse and clothing;

dar zuo beslôz Êrec die hant,

there to closed Erec the hand,

wan daz er ein phärt nam,

but that he a palfrey took,

1415 daz im ze rîtenne gezam,

which to-him for riding befitted,

von ir nifteln, einer magt;

from her kinswoman, a maiden;

diu was, sô man sagt,
who was, as one says,

mit dem herzogen dâ
with the duke there

unde sîn niftel nâ.
and his kinswoman close.

vil gûetlîche sî ins bat,
very kindly she him-of-it asked,

alsô lange unz ûf die stat
so long until to the point

daz er ez von ir enphie.
that he it from her received.

und wizzet wol daz vordes nie
and know well that before never

in der werlde kein man
in the world any man

schœner phârt mê gewan.
fairer palfrey more got.

ez was ze michel noch ze kranc,
it was too big nor too slight,

sîn varwe rehte harmblanc,
its color right ermine-white,

sîn man tief unde breit,
its mane deep and broad,

(lacuna)

mit ganzem gebeine,
with whole limbs,

ze grôz noch ze kleine:
too big nor too small:

sîn haupt truoc ez ze rehte hô:
its head carried it at right high:

ez was senfte unde frô,
it was gentle and merry,

1420

1425

1430

mit langen sîten:

with long flanks:

1435 man moht ez vil gerîten:

one could it much ride:

rükke und fuoz guot genuoc:

back and foot good enough:

hei wie rehte sanfte ez truoc!

hey how right gently it carried!

ez gienc vil drâte über velt,

it went very swiftly over field,

schône, sam ein schef, enzelt;

fairly, like a ship, ambling;

1440 dar zuo unde ez sanfte gie,

there to and it gently went,

sô gestrûchet ez nie.

so stumbled it never.

der satel was alsam,

the saddle was likewise,

daz ez dem pfârde wol gezam:

that it to-the palfrey well befitted:

daz gesmîde, sam ez solde,

the metalwork, as it should,

1445 von rôtem golde.

of red gold.

waz solte dez lange mære

what should the long tale

wie daz geworht wære?

how that made were?

des muoz ich iuch vil verdagen:

of-that must I you much keep-silent:

wan solt ich ez iu allez sagen,

for should I it to-you all tell,

1450 sô wurde der rede ze vil.

so would-be of-the speech too much.

den lop ich iu enden wil

the praise I to-you end will

mit vil kurzen Worten:

with very short words:

darmgürtel wâren borten.

girths were braids.

als ez im gezogen wart,

when it to-him led was,

diu reise wart niht mêre gespart.

the expedition was not more postponed.

diu frouwe Ênîte urloup nam,

the lady Enite leave took,

als einem kinde wol gezam,

as to-a child well befitted,

vil heize weinende,

very hotly weeping,

ze rîten in ellende

to ride into foreign-parts

dan von ir lieben muoter.

away from her dear mother.

diu sprach 'rîcher got vil guoter

who said 'mighty God very good

du geruoche mînes Kindes phlegen.'

thou deign my child's to-care-for.'

mit triuwen langer wart der segen.

with faithfulness longer became the blessing.

nu errahte daz scheiden

now drew the parting

manegen trahen in beiden

many-a tear from-them both

unde dar zuo ir vater.

and there to her father.

1455

1460

1465

unsern herren got bater
our lord God asked-he

daz er ir müeste walten.
that he over-her might rule.

Êrec sagte dem alten,
Erec told the old-one,

1470 swenn im sîn bote kâme,
when to-him his messenger came,

swaz er von dem vernæme,
whatever he from him heard,

daz er dar nâch tæte:
that he there after should-do:

wan er den willen hæte
for he the will had

ze tuone sîner armuot buoz.
to do of-his poverty remedy.

1475 dô neig er im an den fuoz
then bowed he to-him at the foot

und was des gedingen frô.
and was of-the hope glad.

urloup nâmen sî dô
leave took they then

von allem dem gesinde dâ
of all the household there

unde schieden sich sâ
and parted themselves straightway

1480 unde riten von dan.
and rode from thence.

Êrec wolde nieman
Erec would no-one

mit im von stat rîten lân:
with him from place ride let:

mit heile bat ers dâ bestân.
with weal bade he-them there stay.

- alsô sî dô beide
when they then both
- kômen ûf die heide,
came onto the heath, 1485
- Êrec begunde schouwen
Erec began to-look-at
- sîne juncfrouwen.
his young-lady.
- ouch sach sî vil dicke an
also looked she very often at
- bliuclîchen ir man.
shyly her man.
- dô wehseltens vil dicke
then exchanged-they very often 1490
- die friuntlîchen blicke.
the loving glances.
- ir herze wart der minne vol:
their heart became of-the love full:
- si gevielen beide ein ander wol
they pleased both one another well
- unde ie baz unde baz.
and ever better and better.
- dâne vant nît noch haz
there-not found envy or hatred 1495
- ze blîbenne dehein vaz:
for remaining any vessel:
- triuwe und stæte sî besaz.
faithfulness and constancy them possessed.

Enite Clothed at Court, and the Round Table

IX

Arthur rides out with his knights to welcome Erec, and the queen takes Enite, bathes her, and dresses her in green samite, an ermine-lined mantle, and a ruby brooch. The narrator says that Poverty hid her face and Riches took her place. He declines to praise Enite fully, since wiser men have already praised women better. The queen then leads her to the king at the Round Table, whose knights are listed by name, one hundred and forty in all.

nû riten sî vil drâte;

now rode they very swiftly;

wan er gelobt hâte

for he promised had

1500 ze komenne an dem selben tage.

to come on the same day.

nâch der kûneginne sage

according-to the queen's saying

wisten die guoten knehte

knew the good warriors

alle vil rehte

all very rightly

die zît wenne er solde komen:

the time when he should come:

1505 ouch hâten sî ez vernomen

also had they it heard

von dem ritter der dâ kam,

from the knight who there came,

an dem er den sige nam.

on whom he the victory took.

diu ros wâren in bereit.

the horses were for-them ready.

do genôz er sîner frûmekeit.

then profited he from-his prowess.

mit dem küenege Artûse

with the king Arthur

1510

riten von dem hûse

rode from the house

Gâwein und Persevâus

Gawein and Persevaus

und ein herre genant alsus,

and a lord named thus,

der küneec Yels von Gâlôes,

the king Yels of Galoes,

unde Estorz fil roi Ares,

and Estorz son-of king Ares,

1515

Lucâns der schenke in der schar,

Lucans the cupbearer in the company,

dar zuo diu massenê gar,

there to the household wholly,

daz sin enphiengen alle

that they-him received all

mit ritterlîchem schalle,

with knightly din,

geselleclîchen unde wol,

companionably and well,

1520

als man lieben friunt sol

as one dear friend shall

der verlornen funden ist.

who lost found is.

gegen im was zer selben frist

toward him was at-the same time

über den hof gegangen,

across the court gone,

daz er wurde enphangen,

that he should-be received,

1525

mîn frouwe diu küenegîn.

my lady the queen.

sî hiez in willekomen sîn:

she bade him welcome be:

sîner âventiure was sî frô.

of-his adventure was she glad.

die frowen Ênîten nam sî dô,

the lady Enite took she then,

1530 sî sprach 'frou maget wol getân,

she said 'lady maiden well made,

dirre kleider sult ir wandel hân.'

of-these clothes shall you change have.'

nû fuorte sî diu rîche

now led her the mighty-one

in ir heimliche.

into her privacy.

dâ was ir ein bat bereit,

there was for-her a bath ready,

1535 und wart nâch ir arbeit

and was after her hardship

gebadet vaste schône.

bathe'd very fairly.

diu frouwe mit der krône,

the lady with the crown,

ir lieben gast sî kleite:

her dear guest she clothed:

wan dâ was bereite

for there was ready

1540 vil rîchez gewant.

very rich clothing.

sî nâte selbe mit ir hant

she sewed herself with her hand

in ein hemde dez magedîn;

into a shift the maiden;

daz was wîz sîdîn.

that was white silken.

daz hemde sî bedahte,

the shift she covered,

daz man ez loben mahte,

that one it praise might,

mit einem rocke wol gesniten

with a gown well cut

nâch kârlingischen siten,

after French customs,

weder ze enge noch ze wît:

neither too narrow nor too wide:

der was ein grüener samît,

which was a green samite,

mit spannebreiter lîste,

with span-broad border,

dâ sî sî in brîste,

where she her in laced,

mit gespunnem golde

with spun gold

beidenthalp so ez solde,

on-both-sides as it should,

von ietweder hende

from each hand

an der sîten ende.

to the side's end.

ouch wart der frouwen Ênîten

also was the lady Enite

gegurt umbe ir sîten

girded around her sides

ein rieme von Îberne:

a strap from Ireland:

den tragent die frouwen gerne.

that wear the ladies gladly.

1545

1550

1555

- 1560 für ir brust wart geleit
before her breast was laid
 ein haftel wol hande breit:
a brooch well hand broad:
 daz was ein gelpfer rubîn:
that was a bright ruby:
 doch überwant im sînen schîn
yet outshone to-it its sheen
 diu magt vil begarwe
the maiden very wholly
- 1565 mit ir liechten varwe.
with her bright color:
 der roc was bevangen
the gown was enclosed
 mit eim mantel langen
with a mantle long
 der im ze mâze mohte sîn,
which to-it to measure might be,
 daz geville härmin,
the fur ermine,
- 1570 daz dach ein rîcher sigelât.
the cover a rich silk.
 disiu kûneclîche wât
this queenly clothing
 was gezobelt ûf die hant.
was sable-trimmed to the hand.
 ein borte ir hâr zesamne bant:
a braid her hair together bound:
 der was ze mâze breit,
which was to measure broad,
- 1575 kriuzwîs über daz haupt geleit.
crosswise over the head laid.
 sô guot was des schapels schîn,
so good was the circlet's sheen,

ezn mohte niht bezzer sîn.

it could not better be.

ir kleit was rîch, sî selbe guot.

her dress was rich, she herself good.

nu bedaht diu frouwe Armuot

now covered the lady Poverty

von grôzer schame daz houbet:

from great shame the head:

wan sî was beroubet

for she was robbed

ir stat vil friuntlîchen:

her place very friendly:

sî muoste danne entwîchen:

she had-to then withdraw:

von ir hûse sî flôch:

from her house she fled:

Rîcheit sich zir gesæze zôch.

Riches herself to-her seat drew.

alsô schœne schein diu maget

as fair shone the maiden

in swachen kleidern, sô man saget,

in poor clothes, as one says,

daz sî in sô rîcher wât

that she in so rich clothing

nû vil wol ze lobe stât.

now very well to praise stands.

vil gerne ich sî wolde

very gladly I her would

loben als ich solde:

praise as I should:

nû bin ich niht sô wîser man

now am I not so wise man

mirn gebreste dar an.

unless-to-me lack there in.

1580

1585

1590

solch sin ist mir unkunt.

such wit is to-me unknown.

1595 ouch hât sich sô manec wîser munt

also has itself so many-a wise mouth

in wîbes lobe geflizzen

in woman's praise exerted

daz ich niht möhte wizzen

that I not might know

welhen lop ich ir vunde,

what praise I for-her should-find,

ez ensî vor dirre stunde

it unless-be before this hour

1600 baz gesprochen wîben.

better spoken of-women.

sî muoz von mir belîben

she must by me remain

ungelobet nâch ir rehte:

unpraised according-to her right:

wan des gebrist mir tumben knehte.

for that lacks to-me foolish fellow.

doch bescheidichz sô ich beste kan:

yet declare-I-it as I best can:

1605 und als ich ez vernomen han,

and as I it heard have,

sô was ûzer strîte

so was beyond dispute

diu frouwe Ênîte

the lady Enite

diu aller schœneste magt

the of-all fairest maiden

diu ie, sô man sagt,

who ever, as one says,

1610 in des kûneges hof kam.

into the king's court came.

diu küneginne sî nam

the queen her took

friuntlîchen bî ir hant

friendlyly by her hand

und gienc dâ sî den künec vant

and went where she the king found

sitzen nâch sîm rehte

sitting after his right

mit manegem guoten knehte

with many-a good warrior

dâ ze der tavelrunde.

there at the round-table.

die zuo der selben stunde

who at the same hour

dâ gesâzen oder sît,

there sat or since,

der het einer âne strît

of-them had one without dispute

an lobe den besten gewin:

in praise the best gain:

des jâhen se alle under in:

that granted they all among themselves:

wand er nâch sage nie

for he according-to report never

keine lôsheit begie,

any falseness committed,

unde tugent sô manecvalt

and virtue so manifold

daz man in noch zalt

that one him still counted

zeim dem tiuresten man

as-one the worthiest man

der stat dâ gewan:

who seat there got:

1615

1620

1625

des heter zem sedel guot reht,
of-that had-be at-the seat good right,

Gâwein der guote kneht:
Gawein the good warrior:

1630 dâ bî Êrec fil de roi Lac,
there by Erec son of king Lac,

und Lancelot von Arlac,
and Lancelot of Arlac,

und Gornemanz von Grôharz,
and Gornemanz of Groharz,

und li bels Côharz,
and the fair Coharz,

unde Lays hardîz,
and Lays the-bold,

1635 unde Meljanz von Lîz,
and Meljanz of Liz,

und Maldwîz li sages,
and Maldwiz the wise,

und der wilde Dodines,
and the wild Dodines,

und der guote Gandelus,
and the good Gandelus,

bî dem saz Êsus,
by whom sat Esus,

1640 dar nâch der ritter Brîên,
there after the knight Brien,

und Ywein fil li roi Vrîên,
and Ywein son-of the king Vrien,

unde ze allen êren snel
and to all honors swift

Ywân von Lônel:
Ywan of Lonel:

ouch saz ir dâ mêre,
also sat of-them there more,

Îwân von Lafultêre, <i>Iwan of Lafultere,</i>	1645
und Onam von Galiot, <i>and Onam of Galiot,</i>	
und Gasosin von Strangot: <i>and Gasosin of Strangot:</i>	
ouch saz dê zehant <i>also sat there at-once</i>	
der mit dem guldin bogen genant, <i>he with the golden bow named,</i>	
Tristram unde Gârel <i>Tristram and Garel</i>	1650
Blïobleherîn und Titurel, <i>Blïobleherin and Titurel,</i>	
Garedeas von Brebas, <i>Garedeas of Brebas,</i>	
Gues von Strauz und Baulas, <i>Gues of Strauz and Baulas,</i>	
Gaueros von Rabedic, <i>Gaueros of Rabedic,</i>	
und des küneges sun von Ganedic, <i>and the king's son of Ganedic,</i>	1655
Lis von quinte carous, <i>Lis of quinte carous,</i>	
Isdex von mun dolerous, <i>Isdex of mun dolerous,</i>	
Îthêr von Gahevîez, <i>Itber of Gabevez,</i>	
Maunis und der kal Galez, <i>Maunis and the bald Galez,</i>	
Glangodoans und Gareles, <i>Glangodoans and Gareles,</i>	1660
und Estorz fil Ares, <i>and Estorz son-of Ares,</i>	

Galagaundris und Gâlôes,

Galagaundris and Galoes,

und fil Dou Giloles,

and son-of Dou Giloles,

Lohût fil roy Artûs,

Lobut son-of king Artbur,

1665 Segremors und Prauerâûs,

Segremors and Praueraus,

Blerios und Garredomechschin,

Blerios and Garredomechschin,

Los und Troy marlomechschin,

Los and Troy marlomechschin,

Brien lingo mathel,

Brien lingo mathel,

und Equinot fil cont von Haterel,

and Equinot son-of count of Haterel,

1670 Lernfras fil Gain,

Lernfras son-of Gain,

und Henec suctellois fil Gawin,

and Henec suctellois son-of Gawin,

Le und Gabillet,

Le and Gabillet,

von Hochturasch Maneset,

of Hochturasch Maneset,

und Gatuain Batewain fil roy Cabcaflir,

and Gatuain Batewain son-of king Cabcaflir,

1675 * * *

(lacuna)

Galopamur, daz ist wâr,

Galopamur, that is true,

fil Ysabon und Schonebâr,

son-of Ysabon and Schonebar,

Lanfâl unde Brantrivier,

Lanfâl and Brantrivier,

Marlivliôt von Katelange und Barcinier,

Marlivliot of Katelange and Barcinier,

der getriwe Gothardelen,

the faithful Gothardelen,

1680

Gangier von Neranden,

Gangier of Neranden,

unde Scos der bruoder sîn,

and Scos the brother his,

der küene Lespîn,

the bold Lespîn,

und Machmerit Parcefâl von Glois,

and Machmerit Parcefâl of Glois,

und Seckmur von Rois,

and Seckmur of Rois,

1685

Inripalenôt und Estravagaot,

Inripalenot and Estravagaot,

Pehpimerôt und Lamendragot,

Pehpimerot and Lamendragot,

Oruogodelet,

Oruogodelet,

und Affibla delet,

and Affibla delet,

Arderoch Amander,

Arderoch Amander,

1690

und Ganatulander,

and Ganatulander,

Lermebion von Jarbes,

Lermebion of Jarbes,

fil mur defemius aquaterbardes.

son-of mur defemius aquaterbardes.

nû hân ich iu genennet gar

now have I to-you named wholly

die tugenthafte schar.

the virtuous company.

1695

ir was nâch der rehten zal
of-them was according-to the right count

vierzic und hundert über al.
forty and hundred over all.

The Kiss, and the Gifts to Coralus

X

Enite blushes before so many knights, and her beauty makes them forget themselves. Arthur, whose right it is to kiss the fairest, kisses her, and no one objects. Erec sends gold and silver to Coralus, and at Erec's request King Lac grants Coralus two castles, Montrevel and Roadan. Meanwhile Erec and Enite long for each other, and the narrator compares them to a hungry hawk shown its prey and a child longing for its mother.

nû fuorte sî diu künegîn
now led her the queen

gegen der menigîn.
toward the company.

1700 der wunsch was an ir garwe.
the ideal was in her wholly.

als der rôsen varwe
as one roses' color

under wîze liljen gûzze,
under white lilies should-pour,

unde daz zesamne flûzze,
and that together should-flow,

und daz der munt begarwe
and that the mouth wholly

1705 wære von rôsen varwe,
were of roses' color,

dem gelichte sich ir lîp:

to-that likened itself her body:

man gesach nie ritterlîcher wîp.

one saw never more-knightly woman.

alsô sî dô under die

when she then among them

von êrste zuo der tür in gie

at first to the door in went

und sî sitzen gesach,

and them sitting saw,

schame tet ir ungemach.

shame did to-her discomfort.

diu rôsen varwe ir entweich,

the roses' color from-her withdrew,

nû rôt und danne bleich

now red and then pale

wart sî dô vil dicke

became she then very often

von dem anblicke,

from the sight,

ze glîcher wîse als ich iu sage.

in like manner as I to-you say.

als diu sunne in liehtem tage

as the sun in bright day

ir schîn vil volleclichen hât,

its shine very fully has,

und gâhes dô für gât

and suddenly there before goes

ein wolken dünne und niht breit,

a cloud thin and not broad,

sô ist ir schîn niht sô bereit

so is its shine not so ready

als man in vor sach:

as one it before saw:

1710

1715

1720

sus leit kurzen ungemach

thus suffered short discomfort

diu juncfrouwe Ênîte

the young-lady Enite

1725 von schame unlange zîte.

from shame not-long time.

dô sî zuo der tür in gie,

when she to the door in went,

ir schœnez antlütze gevie

her fair face took

der wünneclichen varwe mê

of-the delightful color more

und wart schœner danne ê:

and became fairer than before:

1730 ei wie wol ez ir gezam!

ah how well it her befitted!

dô ir varwe wandel nam,

when her color change took,

von grôzer schame daz geschach:

from great shame that happened:

wan sî nie mê gesach

for she never more saw

sitzen ensamt sô manegen helt

sitting together so many-a hero

1735 von ganzen tugenden ûz erwelt.

for whole virtues out chosen.

dô diu maget in gie,
when the maiden in went,
 von ir schœne erschrâken die
at her beauty were-startled those
 zuo der tavelrunde sâzen
at the round-table sat
 sô daz si ir selber vergâzen
so that they of-them selves forgot
 und kaphten die maget an.
and gaped the maiden at.
 dâ was dehein man,
there was no man,
 ern gunde ir für die schœnsten jehen
unless-be began her as the fairest to-declare
 die er hæte gesehen.
whom he had seen.
 der künec gegen ir gie:
the king toward her went:
 bî der hant er sî vie,
by the hand he her took,
 die frouwen Êniten,
the lady Enite,
 und satzte sî besîten,
and set her beside,
 unde anderhalp sîn
and on-the-other-side his
 die tugenthafte künegin.
the virtuous queen.
 nu gedûhte ouch den künec zît
now seemed also to-the king time
 daz er den ritterlîchen strît
that he the knightly contest
 zehant enden wolde.
at-once end would.

1740

1745

1750

ir wizzet daz er solde

you know that he should

sîn reht hân genomen

his right have taken

1755 (daz habt ir ê wol vernomen),

(that have you before well heard),

von diu daz imz sô wol ergie

by reason that to-him-it so well went

daz er den wîzen hirz gevie,

that he the white stag caught,

diu mit glichem mære

that-one with equal report

diu schœnste dâ wære,

the fairest there were,

1760 daz er die kuste an ir munt.

that he her kissed on her mouth.

des het er unz an die stunt

that had he until at the hour

durch die kûnegîn erbiten.

for the queen waited.

nû wart niht dâ wider gestriten,

now was not there against disputed,

sine wære diu schœnste dâ

she were the fairest there

1765 und über die werlt ouch anderswâ.

and over the world also elsewhere.

wand ich sage iu rehte wie.

for I tell you rightly how.

ir schœne für die andern gie,

her beauty before the others went,

als ob an einer vinstern naht

as if on a dark night

die sterne wæren unbedaht,

the stars were uncovered,

- daz man sî möhte wol gesehen, 1770
that one them might well see,
- sô müeste man von schulden jehen
so must one with reason declare
- sî wæren wol genæme
they were well pleasing
- ob in niht schœners kæme.
if them nothing fairer came.
- und sô den mânen sîn zît
and when the moon its time
- in der naht her für gît, 1775
in the night hitber forth gives,
- sô hât man die wolgetânen
so has one the well-made-ones
- ze nihte bî dem mânen:
at naught beside the moon:
- sî dûhten lobebære,
they seemed praiseworthy,
- ob der mâne niene wære
if the moon not-at-all were
- und ober sî niht enlaste 1780
and if-it them not burdened
- mit sînem liechten glaste.
with its bright gleam.
- sus verswachte ir varwe
thus darkened her color
- die frouwen albegarwe.
the ladies all-wholly.
- ouch fuor der künec ungebeit
also fared the king undelayed
- behalten sîne gewonheit, 1785
to-keep his custom,

als im sî sîn vater liez

as to-him it his father left

(sîn vater Utpandragôn hiez),

(his father Utpandragon was-called),

daz er den kus næme dâ

that he the kiss should-take there

unde ouch niender anderswâ

and also nowhere elsewhere

1790 wan swâ ez die guoten knehte

but where it the good warriors

im gesageten ze rehte.

to-him awarded to right.

ûf stuont der künec dâ:

up stood the king there:

sîn reht nam er sâ

his right took he straightway

von sînes neven friundîn.

from his nephew's lady-love.

1795 daz moht wol âne haz sîn:

that might well without hatred be:

wan Êrec was sîn künne.

for Erec was his kin.

nû huop sich michel wünne

now raised itself great delight

ûf dem hûs ze Kardigân.

on the house at Kardigan.

daz was ze liebe getân

that was to love done

1800 im und sîner friundîn.

to-him and his lady-love.

wâ möhte grœzer freude sîn

where might greater joy be

dan man dâ hete ze aller zît?

than one there had at all times?

sî vlizzen sich wider strît,
they strove themselves in rivalry,

alle die dâ wâren,
all who there were,

ze frœlîchen gebâren.
to joyful demeanor.

1805

do gedâht der tugentrîche
then thought the virtue-rich

Êrec vil ritterlîche
Erec very knightly

an sînes swehers armuot
of his father-in-law's poverty

unde santim schoenez guot
and sent-him fair goods

bî sînen boten in sîn hûs:
by his messengers into his house:

1810

daz gap im der kûnec Artûs.
that gave him the king Arthur.

zwêne soumære,
two pack-horses,

der bürde was vil swære,
whose burden was very heavy,

sî truogen silber unde golt
they carried silver and gold

(wand er was der tohter holt),
(for he was to-the daughter devoted),

1815

daz er sich schône kleite
that he himself fairly clothed

und er sich wol bereite
and he himself well prepared

ze varne in sînes vater lant:
to fare into his father's land:

daz was Destregâles gnant.
that was Destregales named.

- 1820 bî sînen boten bater
by his messengers bade-he
 den künec Lac sînen vater
the king Lac his father
 daz er sînen sweher alten
that he his father-in-law old
 zweier hiuser lieze walten,
two castles let rule,
 diu er im benande
which he to-him named
- 1825 in sînem lande,
in his land,
 und daz sî wærn sîn eigen.
and that they were his own.
 mit namen begunders zeigen,
by name began-he-them to-show,
 Montrevel und Rôadân.
Montrevel and Roadan.
 daz was allez getân.
that was all done.
- 1830 als er diu hiuser zim gewan,
when he the castles for-himself won,
 dô wart der edel man
then was the noble man
 ergetzet swaz im ie gewar:
compensated whatever to-him ever went-wrong:
 unnôtic wart er gar.
free-of-need became he wholly.

man tet in alsô rîche

one made him so rich

daz er sich hêrlîche

that he himself lordly

1835

mit in begên mohte,

with them maintain could,

als sînem adel tohte.

as to-his nobility befitted.

nû grîf wir wider an die vart

now take we again up the way

dâ von der rede begunnen wart.

from which the story begun was.

dô Êrec hin ze hove kam

when Erec thither to court came

1840

und der kûnec sîn reht genam,

and the king his right took,

diu frouwe Ênîte reizte daz,

the lady Enite provoked that,

diu dort als ein engel saz,

who there as an angel sat,

mit schœne und ouch mit gûete,

with beauty and also with goodness,

daz Êrecke sîn gmüete

that to-Erec his spirit

1845

vil herzelîchen nâch ir ranc.

very heartily after her strove.

der tage dûht in ze lanc,

the days seemed to-him too long,

daz er ze langern zîten

that he for longer times

ir minne solde bîten

her love should wait

danne unz an die nâchsten naht.

than until to the next night.

1850

ouch truoc sî im bedaht
also bore she toward-him covered

einen willen dem gelîch,
a will to-that like,

dazz wære wætlich,
that-it were likely,

und het ez nieman gesehen,
and had it no-one seen,

1855 daz dâ wære geschehen
that there were happened

ein vil friuntlîchez spil.
a very friendly play.

zwâre ich iu daz sagen wil,
truly I to-you that say will,

dâ was der Minnen gewin;
there was the Love's gain;

diu Minne rîchsent under in
the Love reigned among them

1860 und fuogte in grôzen ungemach.
and brought them great discomfort.

dô ein daz ander an sach,
when one the other at looked,

dô was in beiden niht baz
then was to-them both not better

dan eim habeche, der im sîn maz
than to-a hawk, that to-it its meat

von geschihten z'ougen bringet,
by chance to-the-eyes brings,

1865 sô in der hunger twinget:
when it the hunger compels:

und als ez im gezeiget wirt,
and when it to-it shown is,

swaz ers dâ für mêre enbirt,
whatever it-it there for more forgoes,

dâ von muoz im wirs geschehen

there from must to-it worse happen

dan ob ers niht hete gesehen.

than if it-it not had seen.

alsô tet in daz bîten wê,

so did to-them the waiting woe,

ze der mâze und dannoch mê.

to that measure and still more.

ir beider danc stuont alsô,

of-them both thought stood thus,

‘jâne werde ich nimmer frô,

‘indeed become I never glad,

ichn gelige dir noch bî

unless-I lie to-thee yet by

zwô naht oder drî.’

two nights or three.’

ez gerten ir sinne

it desired their senses

anderre minne

other love

danne und sî gemâzet sint.

than that they measured are.

alsô dâ ein sunder kint

as there a separated child

sich nâch sîner muoter sent,

itself after its mother longs,

diu ez guotes hât gewent,

who it to-good has accustomed,

sô si im ir gruoze bediutet

when she to-it her greeting shows

und im die hende biutet,

and to-it the hands offers,

under diu im leit geschiht,

amid that to-it sorrow happens,

1870

1875

1880

- 1885 minre gerten sî des niht
less desired they of-that not
 des sî doch gewonnen sît.
which they yet gained afterward.

The Wedding Guests

XI

Arthur insists that the wedding be held at his court and summons princes from far and wide for Pentecost. The narrator lists the counts and dukes who come, among them Count Brandes, Count Margon, and the lord of the glass island, where no storm or serpent is known. Then come ten kings: five young ones dressed alike and bearing sparrowhawks, and five old ones in scarlet and sable, who hawk along the way and whose youngest is a hundred and forty.

- nû was ouch briutennes zît,
now was also of-wedding time,
 wan ez wære in beiden liep getân.
for it were to-them both dear done.
 nû wolde in des niht erlân
now would him of-that not spare
 1890 der tugenthafte Artûs
the virtuous Artbur
 erne brûte in sînem hûs,
unless-be wedded in his house,
 ze freuden sînem lande.
to joy of-his land.
 zehant er ûz sande,
at-once he out sent,
 swar er mohte gereichen,
wherever he could reach,
 1895 brieve und wortzeichen,
letters and tokens,

daz im die fürsten kæmen
that to-him the princes should-come

und alle diez vernæmen
and all who-it heard

von allen landen wîten
from all lands wide

ze sînen hôczîten.
to his festivities.

diu brûtlouft wart gesprochen
the wedding was appointed

in der phingstwochen.
in the Pentecost-week.

nû nenne ich iu die grâven gar
now name I to-you the counts wholly

unde ouch der fürsten schar
and also the princes' company

diu ze den hôczîten kam
which to the festivities came

dâ Êrec froun Ênîten nam.
where Erec lady Enite took.

ez wâren rîche geste.
there were rich guests.

cuns Brandes Doleceste,
count Brandes Doleceste,

der brâhte in sîner schar
who brought in his company

fünf hundert gesellen dar,
five hundred comrades thither,

der geziuc was lobelîch,
the retinue was praiseworthy,

zuo im gekleit alle gelîch:
like him clothed all alike:

unde grâve Margôn,
and count Margon,

1900

1905

1910

geboren von Glufôn:

born of Glufon:

der von Alte montanje

the-one of Alte montanje

1915 (daz ist nâhen bî Britanje)

(that is near by Britain)

und li bers von Treverîn

and the baron of Treverin

mit zehenzec gesellen sîn,

with a-hundred comrades his,

der rîche Gundregôas

the rich Gundregoaas

und der herre Mahelôas,

and the lord Mabeloaas,

1920 von dem glesîn werde genant:

of the glass isle named:

sus stuont ez umbe sîn lant

thus stood it about his land

daz dar über benamen nie

that there over assuredly never

dehein ungewiter ergie:

any storm passed:

ouch was dâ grôzer gemach,

also was there great comfort,

1925 wan man dâ nie wurm gesach:

for one there never serpent saw:

dâ wart nie kalt noch heiz,

there was never cold nor hot,

als man ez von der wârheit weiz.

as one it from the truth knows.

Gresmurs Fîne Posterne,

Gresmurs Fine Posterne,

den sach man dâ gerne,

him saw one there gladly,

und sîn bruoder Gimoers genant:

and his brother Gimoers named:

der wert Avalôn hiez sîn lant:

the isle Avalon was-called his land:

des sælde diu enwas niht kleine,

whose fortune it was not small,

wand er minnet eine feine,

for he loved a fairy,

diu hiez Marguel.

who was-called Marguel.

ouch kam Dâvît von Luntaguel:

also came David of Luntaguel:

duc Guelguezins kom dar

duke Guelguezins came thither

mit hêrlîcher schar:

with lordly company:

der Hôhe bois hiez sîn gewalt.

the Hobe bois was-called his dominion.

nû sint iu die herzogen gezalt

now are to-you the dukes counted

und die grâven über al.

and the counts over all.

nu vernement ouch der kûnege zal.

now bear also the kings' number.

ir wâren zehen, sô man zalt,

of-them were ten, as one counted,

fünve junc und fünve alt,

five young and five old,

alle gewaltic unde rîch.

all powerful and rich.

besunder hâten sî sich

apart had they themselves

gesellet ritterlîchen,

joined knightly,

1930

1935

1940

1945

die jungen zuo ir glîchen,

the young to their equals,

die alten zuo den alten:

the old to the old:

diu mâtze wart behalten.

the measure was kept.

1950 die jungen wâren, sô man seit,

the young were, as one says,

glîch geriten unde gekleit:

alike horsed and clothed:

die alten wâren rehte alsam,

the old were right likewise,

ze der mâtze als ouch in gezam.

to the measure as also to-them befitted.

nû prûeve ich iu der jungen wât:

now describe I to-you the young-ones' clothing:

1955 samât unde sigelât

samite and silk

zesamne geparrieret,

together parti-colored,

mitten gezieret

in-the-middle adorned

mit vêhen gevillen,

with variegated furs,

vil rehte nâch ir willen,

very right after their will,

1960 ze enge noch ze wît gesniten

too narrow nor too wide cut

(lacuna)

gar swarz sam ein raben:

wholly black as a raven:

diu kunden rehte draben.

which could rightly trot.

dise riten vor in daz lant.

these rode ahead into the land.

ir ieglich fuorte ûf der hant

of-them each bore upon the hand

1965

vier mûze ein sparwære.

four molts a sparrowhawk.

diu schar was lobebære:

the company was praiseworthy:

ir brâhte iegelicher dar

of-them brought each thither

driu hundred selln in sîner schar.

three hundred comrades in his company.

an ir wât was der vlîz.

on their clothing was the diligence.

1970

der êrste kûnec Carnîz

the first king Carnîz

(Schorces sîn lant hiez),

(Schorces his land was-called),

und der kûnec von Schotten Angwisiez

and the king of Scotland Angwisiez

mit zwein sûnen sîn

with two sons his

(genant was einer Côi

(named was one Coin

1975

und der ander Goafilroet),

and the other Goafilroet),

und kûnec Beâls von Gomoret.

and king Beals of Gomoret.

ditz was diu junge ritterschaft.

this was the young knighthood.

nû kômen dar mit hêrschaft

now came thither with lordliness

fünf alte kûnege rîche.

five old kings rich.

1980

die wâren ouch geliche

who were also alike

bêde geriten unde gekleit.

both horsed and clothed.

sî hâten an sich geleit

they had on themselves laid

ir alter ein gezæme wât,

of-their age a fitting clothing,

1985 als manz von in vernomen hât,

as one-it from them heard has,

daz beste scharlach daz man vant

the best scarlet that one found

über allez Engellant.

over all England.

diu geville wâren grâ,

the furs were gray,

daz nieman anderswâ

that no-one elsewhere

1990 dehein bezzer mohte hân,

any better could have,

ze Riuzen noch ze Pôlân.

in Russia nor in Poland.

sî was lanc unde breit,

it was long and broad,

allenthalben drûf geleit

everywhere thereon laid

dickiu blech von golde,

thick plates of gold,

1995 daz gewürhte als ez solde,

the work as it should,

guot unde wæhe

good and fine

unde alsô spæhe

and so skillful

daz man ez wol prîsen muoz,

that one it well praise must,

gezobelt breit ûf den fuoz.

sable-trimmed broad down-to the foot.

der zobel was daz nie kein man

the sable was that never any man

2000

deheinen bezzern gewan

any better got

noch tiuwerren vant

nor dearer found

über allez Connelant.

over all Connelant.

des landes phligt der soldân,

of-the land has-charge the sultan,

wande ez ist im undertân.

for it is to-him subject.

2005

ez ist lanc unde wît

it is long and wide

Conne beslozen lît

Conne enclosed lies

zwischen den landen beiden,

between the lands both,

den Kriechen und den heiden.

the Greeks and the heathens.

der beste zobel kumt von dan

the best sable comes from thence

2010

den diu werlt ie gewan.

which the world ever got.

ditz was der fürsten kleit.

this was the princes' dress.

dar under hâten sî geleit
there under had they laid

rîche pelze alsam
rich furs likewise

2015 als der obern wât gezam.
as the outer clothing befitted.

ir iegelîches huot
of-them each's hat

was zobel vil guot.
was sable very good.

geriten wâren sî vil wol,
horsed were they very well,

als ich iu sagen sol.
as I to-you tell shall.

2020 ir phârt blanc snêwîz:
their palfreys bright snow-white:

an in was aller der vlîz
on them was all the diligence

der rîchen alten wol gezam:
the rich old-ones well befitted:

ir gereite guot alsam:
their harness good likewise:

von guotem golde was sîn schîn.
of good gold was its sheen.

2025 daz daz gesmîde solde sîn,
what the metalwork should be,

daz was von silber durchslagen,
that was with silver chased,

mit golde übertragen.
with gold overlaid.

ir darmgürtel borten breit.
their girths braids broad.

- dô disiu schar reit
when this company rode
- ze Britanje in daz lant,
to Britain into the land, 2030
- ir ieglichem ûf der hant
of-them each upon the hand
- ein schœner habech saz,
a fair hawk sat,
- sehs mûze oder baz.
six molts or better.
- dô was guot kurzwîle
then was good pastime
- des weges drî mîle.
of-the way three miles. 2035
- sî funden guote beize dâ:
they found good hawking there:
- beide bäche unde lâ
both brooks and pools
- lâgen antvoegele vol.
lay wild-ducks full.
- swaz ein habech vâhen sol,
whatever a hawk catch shall,
- des funden sî dâ vil.
of-that found they there much. 2040
- man gesach ouch nie vederspil
one saw also never falcons
- sô manegen schœnen fluc getuon.
so many-a fair flight make.
- den antvogel und daz huon,
the wild-duck and the fowl,
- den reiger unde den fasân
the heron and the pheasant
- sâhens vor in ûf stân,
saw-they before them up rise, 2045

den kranech an dem gevilde

the crane in the field

und die gans wilde.

and the goose wild.

ouch fuorten ir knappen

also carried their squires

des tages von den trappen

of-the day of the bustards

2050 ir satel vol behangen.

their saddles full hung.

wan dâ was gar gevangen

for there was wholly caught

swaz ir wart gestoubet.

whatever of-it was flusbed.

vil gar beroubet

very wholly robbed

wart daz gevilde

was the field

2055 * * *

(lacuna)

swâ der hase erschrecket wart,

wherever the hare startled was,

daz was sîn jungeste vart.

that was its last run.

dô sî nâch der beize riten

when they after the hawking rode

unde friuntlîchen striten,

and friendly contended,

2060 under in was ein bescheiden haz:

among them was a discreet rivalry:

ir ieglich wolde daz dâ baz
of-them each would that there better

sîn habech geflogen hæte,
his hawk flown bad,

als man ouch noch tæte.
as one also still would-do.

nû reit der künec Artûs
now rode the king Arthur

gegen in von sînem hûs
toward them from his house

2065

mit sîner massenîe gar
with his household wholly

und enphienc die hêrlîchen schar
and received the lordly company

mit vil grôzer werdekeit:
with very great dignity:

ir komennes was er vil gemeit.
of-their coming was he very glad.

nû sint die guoten knehte
now are the good warriors

2070

enphangen nâch ir rehte
received according-to their right

und vil baz behalten.
and much better kept.

nû nenne ich iu die alten.
now name I to-you the old-ones.

daz was der künec Jernîs
that was the king Jernis

von Riel, biderbe unde wîs.
of Riel, valiant and wise.

2075

der brâhte mit im dar
who brought with him thither

eine lobelîche schar,
a praiseworthy company,

driu hundert gesellen.

three hundred comrades.

der alter hoeret zellen.

their age hear told.

2080 in was daz houbet gar

to-them was the head wholly

und der bart snêvar,

and the beard snow-colored,

nider gewahsen alsô tief

down grown so deep

daz er in ûf die gürtel swief.

that it to-them upon the girdles swept.

der aller jungest, daz ist wâr,

the of-all youngest, that is true,

2085 der het vierzic unde hundert jâr.

he had forty and hundred years.

The Dwarf Kings, and the Wedding

XII

The dwarf king Bilei and his tall brother Brians arrive with two other dwarf lords. A bishop of Canterbury marries Erec and Enite. The celebration has feasting, mock combat, and dancing, and three thousand minstrels receive such rich gifts that none envies another. The festivities last two weeks, and Arthur extends them by fourteen nights more. Gawein then arranges a tournament against four companions, to be held in three weeks between Tarebron and Prurin.

nu vernemet waz ir mêtê sî.

now hear what of-them more be.

der getwerge künec Bîlêi

the dwarfs' king Bilei

und sîn bruoder Brîans genant:

and his brother Brians named:

Antipodes hiez ir lant.

Antipodes was-called their land.

ez wurden einer muoter kint,

they were of-one mother children,

die bruoder geheizen sint,

who brothers called are,

nie ungelîcher danne sî,

never more-unlike than they,

Brîans unde Bîlêi.

Brians and Bilei.

uns sagent daz wâriu mære

to-us tell the true tidings

daz Brîans langer wære

that Brians taller were

dan ie man bî sînen zîten

than ever man in his times

in allen landen wîten

in all lands wide

anderhalbe spanne:

by-one-and-a-half spans:

sô saget man uns danne

so tells one to-us then

daz kein twerc wære noch sî

that no dwarf were nor be

kurzer danne Bîlêi.

shorter than Bilei.

swes im an wahsenne gebrast,

whatever to-him in growing lacked,

daz het der wênige gast

that bad the little guest

vol an dem muote.

full in the spirit.

2090

2095

2100

- 2105 ouch vant man an dem guote
also found one in the goods
 niht vil sîner ebenrîchen.
not many of-his equals-in-wealth.
 er kom dar hêrlîchen.
he came thithber lordly.
 sîn geselleschaft was grôz:
his company was great:
 er brâht dar zwêne sîne genôz,
he brought thithber two his peers,
- 2110 ouch herren über der twerge lant.
also lords over the dwarfs' land.
 die wâren alsô genant,
who were thus named,
 Grigoras und Glecidolân.
Grigoras and Glecidolan.
 die kûnege ich genant hân.
the kings I named have.
 nu enphienc der kûnec Artûs
now received the king Arthur
- 2115 ze Kardigân in sînem hûs
at Kardigan in his house
 dise rîchen geste
these rich guests
 sô er mohte beste.
as he could best.
 nû was komen der tac
now was come the day
 daz Êrec fil de roi Lac
that Erec son of king Lac
- 2120 solde nemen frowen Ênîten.
should take lady Enite.
 wes möhten sî langer bîten?
for-what might they longer wait?

wan sî wârens beidiu frô.

for they were-of-it both glad.

zesamene gap sî dô

together gave them then

eines bischoves hant

a bishop's band

von Cantwârje ûz Engellant.

of Canterbury out-of England.

2125

dô huop sich dâ ein hôchzît

then raised itself there a festivity

daz man ir vollen lop gît.

that one to-it full praise gives.

dâ erschein kein armuot.

there appeared no poverty.

dâ was sô manec ritter guot

there was so many-a knight good

daz ich iu zeiner mâze

that I to-you in-a measure

2130

wil sagen von ir frâze:

will tell of their eating:

wan sî ahten mêre

for they beeded more

ûf ander êre

on other honor

danne daz sî frâzen vil.

than that they ate much.

dâ von ich iu kurze wil

there from I to-you briefly will

2135

gesagen von der wirtschaft.

tell of the hospitality.

dâ was alles des überkraft

there was of-all that abundance

des liute und ors solden leben:

on-which people and horses should live:

des wart in âne mâze gegeben,
of-that was to-them without measure given,

2140 wan daz man des næme
but that one of-it took

als es mænlich zæme.
as it every-man would-befit.

dâ buhurt, tanzen huop sich hie,
there buburt, dancing raised itself here,

sô der imbîz ergie,
when the meal was-over,

und werte unz an die naht.
and lasted until to the night.

2145 sô wart dâ trûren bedaht.
so was there sadness covered.

alsô sî des verdrôz,
when they of-that wearied,

sô was ir freude sus grôz.
so was their joy thus great.

ze den frouwen sî giengen
to the ladies they went

die sî schône enphiengen.
who them fairly received.

2150 dâ was diu handelunge guot.
there was the entertainment good.

dar zuo freute in den muot
there to gladdened to-them the spirit

daz vil sûeze seitspil
the very sweet string-music

und ander kurzwîle vil,
and other pastime much,

sagen unde singen
reciting and singing

2155 und snelleclîchen springen.
and swift leaping.

dâ was aller künste kraft,
there was of-all arts strength,

von allen ampten meisterschaft.
of all offices mastery.

die aller besten spilman
the of-all best minstrels

die diu werlt ie gewan
whom the world ever got

und die meister wâr genant,
and who masters were named,

der was dâ zehant
of-them was there at-once

driu tûsent unde mêre.
three thousand and more.

ez geschach nie græzer êre
it happened never greater honor

weder vordes noch sît
either before or since

dan zuo der selben hôchzît.
than at the same festivity.

swaz der diete dar kam,
whatever of-the people thither came,

der guot umbe êre nam,
who goods for honor took,

der tet man eines niht rât.
of-them did one one not without.

den gwîs varende volc hât,
which surely traveling folk have,

swâ man einem vil gât
wherever one to-one much gives

und dem andern niht, des hât er nît
and to-the other nothing, of-that has he envy

und fluochet der hôchzît.
and curses the festivity.

2160

2165

2170

des kam dâ niemen in den strît:

of-that came there no-one into the dispute:

wan sî wurden rîche

for they became rich

2175 alle gelîche.

all alike.

man gap dâ vil starke.

one gave there very strongly.

von golde drîzic marke

of gold thirty marks

die gap man dâ vil manegem man

that gave one there very many-a man

der vor nie gewan

who before never got

2180 eines halben phundes wert.

a half pound's worth.

sî wurden alle sô gewert

they were all so provided

dêz wætlich nimmer mêre ergât.

that-it likely never more passes.

beide ros unde wât

both horses and clothing

gap man der swachen diet

gave one to-the poor folk

2185 die vor nieman beriet.

whom before no-one provided.

alsô wart daz wol behuot

so was that well guarded

daz dâ nieman umbe guot

that there no-one for goods

dem anderen nît truoc:

to-the other envy bore:

man gap in allen genuoc.

one gave to-them all enough.

dâ wart nieman geschant:

there was no-one shamed:

man gap in allen zehant.

one gave to-them all at-once.

enphâhens zeran in nie,

of-receiving ran-out to-them never,

unz daz diu hôchzît zergie,

until that the festivity broke-up,

unz an den vierzehenden tac.

until at the fourteenth day.

sus lange brûte fil roi Lac.

thus long wedded son-of king Lac.

als diu brût louft nam ende,

when the wedding took end,

nû schiet mit rîcher hende

now departed with rich hand

vil frœlîchen von dan

very joyfully from thence

manec wol sprechender spilman.

many-a well speaking minstrel.

die sprâchen alle

who spoke all

mit gelîchem schalle

with like din

wol den hôchzîten:

well of-the festivities:

Êrecke und frowen Ênîten

to-Erec and lady Enite

wunschten se aller sælekeit.

wished they all blessedness.

diu was in doch nû bereit

which was to-them yet now ready

lange unde manic jâr.

long and many-a year.

2190

2195

2200

2205

ir wunsch wart vollecliche wâr:

their wish became fully true:

wan zwei gelieber wurden nie

for two more-dear became never

unz ez der tôt undervie,

until it the death interrupted,

2210 der allez lieb leidet

which all love grieves

so er lieb von liebe scheidet.

when it love from love parts.

ouch wolden urloup hân genomen

also would leave have taken

die fürsten die dar wâren komen.

the princes who thither were come.

nû lengert die hôchzît

now lengthened the festivity

2215 der wirt vierzehen naht sît.

the host fourteen nights after.

ze liebe Êrecke tet er daz,

to love of-Erec did he that,

wand er in sînem herzen saz,

for he in his heart sat,

und ouch durch frowen Ênîten.

and also for lady Enite.

ze den andern hôchzîten

to the other festivities

2220 stuont ir freude alsam ouch ê:

stood their joy likewise also before:

ir wart niht minner, ir wart mê.

of-it became not less, of-it became more.

nû sprâchen daz genuoge,
now said this many-ones,
 ez wære âne fuoge
it were without fitness
 ob ein alsô guot man
if a so good man
 solde scheiden von dan,
should part from thence,
 dane wurde ein turnei genomen,
unless-there were a tournament taken,
 sît sî durch freude wæren komen
since they for joy were come
 ze Britanje in ir lant.
to Britain into their land.
 des antwurt Gâwein zehant,
to-that answered Gawein at-once,
 die solden ouch sî vinden dâ.
those should also they find there.
 einen turnei nam er sâ
a tournament took he straightway
 wider dise vier gesellen:
against these four comrades:
 der namen hœrent zellen.
whose names hear told.
 Entreferich und Tenebroc,
Entreferich and Tenebroc,
 Mêlîz und Meljadoc.
Meliz and Meljadoc.
 der turnei wart gesprochen
the tournament was appointed
 über drî wochen
in three weeks
 von dem nêhsten mântage.
from the next Monday.

2225

2230

2235

nâch der âventiure sage
according-to the adventure's saying

2240 sô solde der turnei sîn
so should the tournament be

zwischen Tarebron und Prurîn:
between Tarebron and Prurîn:

daz was in glîche gelegen,
that was to-them equally placed,

in bêden ze halben wegen.
to-them both at half ways.

nû schieden dise vier man
now departed these four men

2245 mit urloube von dan,
with leave from thence,

daz sî sich bereiten dar zuo:
that they themselves prepared there for:

wandez was in niht ze fruô.
for-it was to-them not too early.

Erec's Arms, and the Eve of the Tournament

XIII

Erec worries about how he will appear at his first tournament, and Arthur supplies what he lacks, although Erec accepts only what modesty allows. His three shields and his squires are described. Parting from Enite, he leaves his heart with her. On the eve of the tournament he lodges apart and behaves modestly, not thinking himself proven enough to make a show, yet he welcomes any companion who seeks him out.

Êrec fil de roi Lac

Erec son of king Lac

maneger gedanke phlac,

of-many thoughts took-care,

wie er dar sô kæme

how he thither so should-come

als sînem namen gezæme;

as to-his name would-befit;

wander vor der stunde

for-he before the hour

turnierens nie begunde.

tourneying never began.

vil dicke gedâht er dar an,

very often thought he there on,

in swelhem werde ein junger man

in what worth a young man

in den êrsten jâren stât,

in the first years stands,

daz er daz immer gerne hât.

that he that ever gladly has.

er vorhte den langen itewîz.

he feared the long reproach.

2250

2255

deste grœzeren vlîz
the greater diligence

2260 gâben sîne ræte
gave his counselors

wie erz dâ wol getæte.
how be-it there well should-do.

dô was er niht sô rîche
then was he not so rich

daz er vollecliche
that he fully

mohte mit dem guote
could with the goods

2265 volziehen sînem muote.
carry-out his purpose.

swaz aber im des gebrast
whatever though to-him of-that lacked

(ich meine daz er was dâ gast:
(I mean that he was there guest:

sîn lant was im verre),
his land was to-him far),

Artûs der herre
Arthur the lord

2270 gap im swaz er vor sprach.
gave him whatever he before spoke.

doch was er im dar an gemach
yet was he to-him there in considerate

daz es in iht bevilte.
lest of-it him at-all should-weary.

er entweich sîner milte
he withdrew-from his bounty

mit bete swâ er mohte,
with requests wherever he could,

2275 als sîner schame tohte.
as to-his shame befitted.

er hete wunder getân,
he would-have wonders done,

möhte er gehabt hân
might he had have

nâch sînem willen volle hant.
according-to his will full hand.

als ez im nû was gewant,
as it to-him now was disposed,

dar nâch sazter sînen muot.
there after set-be his purpose.

sîn harnasch was niht sô guot
his armor was not so good

noch solch sîn geselleschaft,
nor such his company,

als ob er hete des guotes kraft.
as if he had of-the goods strength.

nâch sîner maht viengerz an.
according-to his means began-be-it on.

nû pruofte der junge man
now devised the young man

drîe schilte gelîch
three shields alike

und driu gereite alsamelîch,
and three harnesses likewise,

mit éinem wâfen garwe:
with one blazon wholly:

doch schiet sî diu varwe.
yet parted them the color.

der ein hurtlich gnuoc was,
the one charge-worthy enough was,

ûze ein liehtez spiegelglas:
outside a bright mirror-glass:

2280

2285

2290

vil verre glaste der schîn

very far gleamed the sheen

(dar ûf ein mouwe guldîn,

(there upon a sleeve golden,

ze der mâze sô sî solde);

to the measure as it should);

2295 innen gar von golde.

inside wholly of gold.

der ander von zinober rôt:

the other of cinnabar red:

dar ûf er slahen gebôt

there upon he to-strike commanded

ein mouwen von silber wîz:

a sleeve of silver white:

diu was geworht in solhen vlîz

that was wrought with such diligence

2300 daz mans sô kurzer stunde

that one-it so short time

niht baz erziugen kunde,

not better produce could,

und niender dem erren glîch:

and nowhere to-the first like:

der was genuoc ritterlîch.

it was enough knightly.

alsô wart der dritte var,

so was the third colored,

2305 von golde ûze und innen gar:

of gold outside and inside wholly:

dar ûf ein mouwe zobelîn,

there upon a sleeve sable,

daz diu niht bezzer mohte sîn:

that it not better could be:

dar über ein buckel geleit,

there over a boss laid,

von silber schône zerbreit:

of silver fairly spread-out:

daz rîs ze breit noch ze smal;

the rim too broad nor too narrow;

ez bevienc daz bret über al:

it enclosed the board over all:

daz bestuont die mouwe.

that surrounded the sleeve.

innerhalp ein frouwe

inside a lady

an dem vordern orte:

on the front end:

der schiltrieme ein borte

the shield-strap a braid

mit guotem gesteine:

with good precious-stones:

des was er niht eine.

of-that was it not alone.

sî wâren alle innen glîch

they were all inside alike

die riemen alsamelîch.

the straps likewise.

nu pruoſte er nâch der ahte

now devised he according-to the manner

so er behendeclîchest mahte

as he most-deftly could

drî banier samelîch,

three banners likewise,

eim ieglîchen schilte sîn gelîch.

to-one each shield its like.

dar zuo Êrec der junge man

there to Erec the young man

mit Artûses helfe gewan,

with Arthur's help got,

2310

2315

2320

2325

des küneges von Britanje,
of-the king of Britain,

fünf ros von Spanje,
five horses from Spain,

helme von Poitiers,
helms from Poitiers,

halsberge von Schamliers,
hauberks from Schamliers,

2330 îserkolzen von Glenîs.
iron-leggings from Glenis.

der herre junc unde wîs
the lord young and wise

zieglîchem rosse fuort er
for-each horse brought he

von Lofainge zehen sper,
from Lofainge ten spears,

von Etelburc die schefte,
from Etelburc the shafts,

2335 gevert ze ritterscheft,
painted for knighthood,

sînen helm gezieret schône:
his helm adorned fairly:

ein engel ûz einer krône
an angel out-of a crown

von golde geworht schein.
of gold wrought shone.

wâpenroc und covertiure al ein,
surcoat and caparison all one,

2340 beidiu gnuoc kuntlîch,
both enough recognizable,

grüener samît phelle rîch,
green samite silk rich,

zesamne geparrieret,
together parti-colored,

mit borten wol gezieret.

with braids well adorned.

fünfzehn knaben er gewan,

fifteen squires he got,

sô behende daz kein man

so deft that no man

2345

deheine tiuwerre vant

any dearer found

ze Britanje über daz lant.

in Britain over the land.

ieglîches harnasch was guot,

each's armor was good,

ein panzier unde ein îsenhuot,

a mail-coat and an iron-bat,

unde ein kiule wol beslagen.

and a club well mounted.

2350

sîniu sper truog ein wagen

his spears carried a wagon

hin dâ der turnei solde sîn,

thither where the tournament should be,

zwischen Tarebron und Prurîn,

between Tarebron and Prurin,

ê dan Êrec wurde bereit,

before than Erec became ready,

als ich ê hân geseit.

as I before have said.

2355

dâ was ouch turnierens zil:

there was also tourneying's goal:

guoter ritter kom dar vil.

of-good knights came thither many.

und als er wolde rîten
and when he would ride

und von der frowen Ênîten
and from the lady Enite

2360 dô begunde scheiden,
then began to-part,

von den gesellen beiden
of the comrades both

ein getriuwiu wandelunge ergie,
a faithful exchange passed,

unde sage iu rehte wie.
and tell you rightly how.

der vil getriuwe man,
the very faithful man,

2365 ir herze fuorter mit im dan,
her heart led-he with him thence,

daz sîn beleip dem wîbe
that his remained to-the woman

versigelt in ir lîbe.
sealed in her body.

an der samztages naht
on the Saturday's night

kom mit aller sîner maht
came with all his might

2370 der kûnec Artûs dar.
the king Arthur thither.

er brâht sîn massenîe gar.
he brought his household wholly.

nû wâr die besten dâ ze wege
now were the best there on-the way

geherberget nâch ir phlege.
lodged according-to their custom.

die uopten ritterlîchen schal.
who practiced knightly din.

herberge wâren über al

lodgings were over all

2375

mit liechten bestaht

with lights set

deiswâr alle die naht.

truly all the night.

Êrec herbergte dort

Erec lodged yonder

von den andern an ein ort.

from the others at a spot.

deheines schalles er began:

no din he began:

2380

er lebte als ein vol karger man

he lived as a very sparing man

ungiudeclîchen

unostentatiously

und wolt sich niht gelîchen

and would himself not liken

einem guoten knehte,

to-a good warrior,

und von allem rehte.

and by all right.

2385

giudens urloup möhter hân

of-display leave might-he have

derz dicke für in hete getân:

who-it often before him had done:

er dûhte sich niht volkomen

he seemed to-himself not accomplished

noch an sîner manheit vernomen,

nor in his manhood renowned,

daz ez im erloubet möhte sîn.

that it to-him permitted might be.

2390

swelher der gesellen sîn

whichever of-the comrades his

durch geselleschaft geruochte

for company deigned

daz er sîn herberge suochte,

that he his lodging sought,

der wart schône enphangen dâ,

he was fairly received there,

2395 mit gruoze baz dan anderswâ:

with greeting better than elsewhere:

an swelhen andern dingen

in whatever other things

er ez niht mohte bringen,

he it not could bring,

dâ schein sîn wille alsô

there appeared his will so

daz ir ieglicher was frô

that of-them each was glad

2400 swa er im ze lobenne geschach.

wherever he to-him to praise happened.

in minnet allez daz in sach.

him loved all that him saw.

er tete alsam der Sælden schol:

he did like one Fortune's debtor:

man spræche im anders niht sô wol.

one would-speak of-him otherwise not so well.

The Tournament: The First Jousts

XIV

On Sunday Erec arms before anyone else and unhorses two knights, then wins the prize in the evening jousting. The next morning, after Mass, he rides out nearly unarmed with five squires and breaks all their spears before the fighting begins. Lady Report sends a groom, who tells Arthur and scolds the court for sleeping. In the main tournament Erec unhorses the proud Lando and fights until his shield is shattered, giving away every horse he wins.

nû lebte disiû ritterschaft

now lived this knight-hood

mit gwonlîcher freuden kraft,

with customary joy's strength,

als man ze turneien phlac.

as one at tournaments practiced.

morgen an dem suntac

morning on the Sunday

tâtens alsz in was gewant:

did-they as-it to-them was disposed:

sî hiezen ir îsengwant

they bade their armor

vegen unde riemen.

clean and strap.

dâ was lützel iemen

there was little anyone

wan den turnierens wol gezam.

but to-whom tourneying well befitted.

alsô dô für kam

when then forth came

vil kûme mitter tac,

very barely mid day,

2405

2410

- 2415 Êrec fil de roi Lac
Erec son of king Lac
 der wâfente sich sâ
he armed himself straightway
 ê iemen anderswâ,
before anyone elsewhere,
 daz er die just næme
that he the joust should-take
 und in fürkæme,
and them should-forestall,
- 2420 swâ er des state funde.
wherever he of-that opportunity should-find.
 nû wârn ouch zuo der stunde
now were also at the hour
 für komen ûf den selben muot
forth come upon the same purpose
 gesellen zwêne, ritter guot:
comrades two, knights good:
 und als sî in gesâhen,
and when they him saw,
- 2425 zuo im begundens gâhen
to him began-they to-hasten
 ûf vil gewissen sin.
upon very sure intent.
 der ein justierte wider in:
the one jousted against him:
 den selben er vom orse stach.
the same he from-the horse thrust.
 dem andern alsam geschach.
to-the other likewise happened.
- 2430 ir rosse er niene ruochte,
their horses he not-at-all heeded,

wan daz er fürbaz suochte

but that he further sought

ritterschaft mêre.

knightbood more.

do geviel im diu êre

then fell to-him the honor

diu in an lobe zierte,

which him with praise adorned,

daz er schûfte und justierte,

that he charged and jousted,

alsô daz nie ritter baz.

so that never knight better.

zwô gnâde fuogten im daz:

two graces brought him that:

sælde und grôze werdekeit

fortune and great worthiness

die hete got an in geleit.

which had God on him laid.

dise just het er genomen

this joust had he taken

ê man ze velde wære komen:

before one to field were come:

wan sî was genuoc fruo.

for it was quite early.

doch riten sî enmitten zuo

yet rode they in-the-midst toward

von ietwederm teile.

from each side.

ze grôzem sînem heile

to great his weal

menneclîch diu ros sach

everyone the horses saw

da er die ritter von stach,

where he the knights from thrust,

2435

2440

2445

dâ sî dâ liefen hin unt her.

where they there ran thither and hither.

sî sprâchen al 'jâ herre, wer

they said all 'indeed lord, who

2450 mac disiu ros erledeget hân?

can these horses freed have?

ez hât benamen Êrec getân.'

it has assuredly Erec done.'

vil wol wart er geprîset dâ.

very well was he praised there.

nû huop sich ouch sâ

now raised itself also straightway

vil rîch diu vespereide

very rich the vespers-joust

2455 enmitten ûf der heide.

in-the-midst on the heath.

des wart vil guot diu ritterschaft,

of-that became very good the knighthood,

daz ietwederthalp ir kraft

that on-either-side their strength

wac wol geliche.

weighed well equally.

dô wart ritterlîche

then was knightly

2460 genuoc gejustieret

enough jousted

und wol gepungieret

and well spurred

und geslagen mit dem swerte.

and struck with the sword.

die wîle der turnei werte

the while the tournament lasted

Êrec fil de roi Lac

Erec son of king Lac

grôzer unmuoze phlac.

great busyness practiced.

2465

swer im gewartet solde hân,

whoever on-him waited should have,

der dorfte dougen niht ruowen lân:

he needed the-eyes not rest let:

man sach in dort und nû hie.

one saw him there and now here.

baz turnierte ritter nie:

better tourneyed knight never:

sî nâmen al sîn eines war:

they took all of-him alone heed:

2470

er was der êrste dar

he was the first there

und der jungest von dan.

and the last from thence.

Êrec den prîs gewan

Erec the prize won

des âbents ze beiden sîten:

of-the evening on both sides:

des jâhen sî âne strîten.

that granted they without disputing.

2475

er reit unz imz diu naht benam.

he rode until to-him-it the night took.

dô man ze herberge kam,

when one to lodging came,

anderr rede dô niemen phlac,

other speech then no-one practiced,

wan 'Êrec fil de roi Lac

but 'Erec son of king Lac

2480 der ist der baz tuonde man

he is the better doing man

den unser lant ie gewan

whom our land ever got

von sînen jâren.

of his years.

er möht niht baz gebâren.'

he could not better bear-himself:

im was des âbents geschehen

to-him was of-the evening happened

2485 des grœzlichen wart gejeihen:

of-which greatly was declared:

wan er den prîs bejagte.

for he the prize won.

morgen alsez tagte,

morning when-it dawned,

Êrec ûf machte sich.

Erec up made himself.

sîn êrste vart was ritterlich:

his first course was knightly:

2490 zuo der kirchen er gie

to the church he went

und ergap sich im dem noch nie

and gave himself to-him whom still never

voller gnâden zeran:

full grace ran-out:

ez wart ouch nie gar frumer man,

it was also never wholly worthy man,

an im enstüende sîn rât:

with him unless-stood his counsel:

wan der in vor im hât

for who him before him has

2495

an allen sînen dingen,

in all his things,

der versehe sich gelingen.

he may-expect himself success.

Êrec triute im vil sêre

Erec trusted him very sorely

um sîn ritterlîche êre,

for his knightly honor,

daz er der geruochte phlegen.

that he of-it deigned to-take-care.

2500

als sich endet der segen,

when itself ended the blessing,

schilt und ors was im bereit.

shield and horse was for-him ready.

nû dunket mich diu gnendekeit

now seems to-me the daring

lobelîch unde grôz,

praiseworthy and great,

daz er âne wâfen blôz

that he without arms bare

2505

und sellelôs ze velde kam,

and comradeless to field came,

wan daz er fünf knaben zuo im nam.

but that he five squires to him took.

der ieglîch fuorte driu sper.

of-whom each carried three spears.

diu selben vertete er

the same used-up he

ze rehter just unde bar,

in right joust and bare,

2510

daz des niemen wart gewar

that of-it no-one was aware

von sînem teile.

from his side.

nâch disem heile

after this weal

stal er sich wider in,

stole he himself back in,

2515 als ez niender wære umbin.

as it nowhere were about-him.

nû het diu frouwe Melde

now had the lady Report

fruo gesant ze velde

early sent to field

einen garzûn besehen

a groom to-see

waz Êrecke wære geschehen

what to-Erec were happened

2520 ze êren und ze prîse.

to honor and to prize.

daz tet der wortwîse

that made the word-wise-one

dem kûnege Artûse bekant.

to-the king Arthur known.

die er ligende noch vant,

those he lying still found,

die begunde er strâfen

them began he to-rebuke

2525 und beruofen umbir slâfen.

and to-reproach for-their sleeping.

er sprach 'wes liget ir hie?

he said 'why lie you here?

wer bejagte noch ie
who won yet ever

mit slâfe dehein êre?
with sleep any honor?

hiute hât Êrec sêre
today has Erec sorely

gurbort sper unde swert.
used spear and sword.

2530

got gebim heil swenn er sîn gert.
God give-him weal whenever he of-it desires.

ich wil im immer guotes jehen.
I will to-him ever good declare.

ich hân an im ersehen
I have in him seen

alsô manlîch getât
so manly deed

der er immer êre hât.
of-which he ever honor has.

2535

sus machet er im friunde mê
thus made he to-him friends more

und stuont ze prîse baz dan ê.
and stood in prize better than before.

ein kurze ruowe er dô nam.
a short rest he then took.

wande als schiere er in kam,
for as soon he in came,

dô wâren se alle ûz komen
then were they all out come

2540

und hâten messe vernomen,
and had mass heard,

als sis beginnen solden
as they-of-it begin should

die turnieren wolden.
who tourney would.

ein lützel az er unde getranc:

a little ate he and drank:

2545 vil enliez in der gedanc

much let-not him the thought

den er hin wider hâte.

whith he thithter back had.

vil wunderlîche drâte

very wondrously quickly

wâfent sich dô mânlich:

armed himself then every-man:

alsam tet er sich.

likewise did he himself.

2550 daz geschach nie sô schiere

that happened never so soon

sô daz sî die gesellen viere,

so that they the comrades four,

Entreferich Tenebroc

Entreferich Tenebroc

Mêlîz unde Meljadoc,

Melîz and Meljadoc,

über jenez velt sâhen

over yonder field saw

2555 mit ir baniere gâhen.

with their banners hasten.

sî hâten grôze kraft

they had great strength

und genendige ritterschaft,

and daring knighthood,

manege banier rîche,

many-a banner rich,

von varwe mislîche.

of color various.

Êrec und Gâwein

2560

Erec and Gawein

und swaz dâ ritterscheftē schein,
and whatever there of-knighthood appeared,

ûf machten sî sich sâ.
up made they themselves straightway.

dô hôte man dâ
then heard one there

michel kreijieren
great war-crying

vor den banieren.
before the banners. 2565

Êrec der êrste an sî kam,
Erec the first on them came,

als einem ritter gezam.
as to-a knight befitted.

wâpenroc und sîn krône
surcoat and his crown

machte in ûz schône
made him out fairly

unde sô daz dâ zehant
and so that there at-once 2570

kein ritter was sô verre erkant.
no knight was so far known.

Êrec der herre
Erec the lord

kam hin für sô verre
came forth before so far

daz er justierens state gewan.
that he of-jousting opportunity got.

engegen reit ein frumer man,
toward rode a worthy man, 2575

der hôchvertige Landô.
the baughty Lando.

ensamt justierten sî dô.

together jousted they then.

der het ez vordes âne wân

who had it before without doubt

alsô dicke wol getân

so often well done

2580 daz man in nande

that one him named

zem besten inne lande.

as-the best in-the land.

Êrecke dô sô wol geschach

to-Erec then so well happened

daz er in von dem rosse stach.

that he him from the horse thrust.

er urbort sich sêre:

he employed himself sorely:

2585 wan dannoch vertet er mêre

for besides used-up he more

zwelf sper zwischen den scharn.

twelve spears between the hosts.

des muos in grôz tuht bewarn

of-that must him great ability protect

daz er unbekumbert dô beleip.

that he unbindered then remained.

alsô lange er daz treip,

so long he that pursued,

2590 unz man im den schilt zerstach

until one to-him the shield pierced

unde mit slegen zerbrach

and with blows broke

daz er im ze nihte tohte.

that it to-him to naught served.

als er gwerlîchest mohte,

as he most-defensively could,

sô staphete er ûz von in.

so stepped he out from them.

schilt und ors gap er hin:

shield and horse gave he away:

ûf ein anderz er gesaz

upon an other he mounted

und warnte sich mit schilte baz

and provided himself with shield better

und mit niuwem baniere.

and with new banner.

daz tet er nie sô schiere

that did he never so soon

ê er die sîne zuo sach varn.

before he the his toward saw fare.

nu enmohte er zwischen den scharn

now could-not he between the hosts

gejustieren mêre.

joust more.

nû wart dâ vil sêre

now was there very sorely

geslagen unde gestochen,

struck and thrust,

manic sper zerbrochen,

many-a spear broken,

dô bédenthalp diu ritterschaft

when on-both-sides the knighthood

mit sô williger kraft

with so willing strength

zesamne liezen strîchen.

together let charge.

2595

2600

2605

nû waz möhte sich gelîchen
now what might itself be-liked

2610 dem schalle von den scheften
to-the din from the shafts

wan dâ von windes kreften
but when from wind's strength

ein walt begunde vallen?
a forest began to-fall?

dô tet erz vor in allen,
then did he-it before them all,

Êrec fil de roi Lac:
Erec son of king Lac:

2615 wand er an dem mântac
for he on the Monday

manec ros erledegte dâ.
many-a horse freed there.

diu liez er von der hant sâ,
those let he from the hand straightway,

daz er ir deheinez nam:
that he of-them none took:

wand er dar niene kam
for he thither not-at-all came

2620 ûf guotes gewin.
upon goods' gain.

dar an kêrte er sînen sin,
there on turned he his mind,

ob er den prîs möhte bejagen.
if he the prize might win.

ich wil ouch iu zwâre sagen,
I will also to-you truly say,

sîn lîp wart lützel dâ gespart.
his body was little there spared.

2625 dô der turnei stênde wart,
when the tournament standing became,

dô sach man in sô dicke

then saw one him so often

niendr als in der dicke,

nowhere as in the thick,

da er muoste enphâhen unde geben.

where he must receive and give.

man sach in manlîche leben.

one saw him manfully live.

The Tournament: Erec Bareheaded

XV

Resting with his helm off, Erec sees his side retreating and rides back in bareheaded, saving Gawein and two companions and routing the enemy. The narrator praises Gawein's virtues. At the tournament's close Erec unhorses Royderodes in a friendly joust and is compared to Solomon, Absalom, Samson, and Alexander. Enite rejoices at his fame but fears he will risk his life for honor, and she decides that a brave husband is better than a coward.

als er gejustierte gnuoc

when he jousted enough

und mit dem swerte gesluoc

and with the sword struck

und daz er muoden began,

and that he to-tire began,

durch ruowe entweich er von in dan.

for rest withdrew he from them thence.

als er von dem rosse gesaz,

when he from the horse dismounted,

ein soldiers nam daz

a soldier took that

und seite ims gnâde unde danc.

and said to-him-for-it gratitude and thanks.

2630

2635

sîn rouwe werte unlanc.

his rest lasted not-long.

als er den helm abe gebant,

when he the helm off unbound,

sîn knaben wâren dâ zehant

his squires were there at-once

2640 und lôsten im daz hûetelîn,

and loosed for-him the coif,

als er erküelet solde sîn;

as he cooled should be;

des im doch niht state geschach:

of-which to-him yet not opportunity happened:

wande er die sînen sach

for he the his saw

flühteclîche entwîchen,

fleeingly withdraw,

2645 und doch müezelîchen:

and yet leisurely:

sô ruhtens ie baz unde baz.

so retreated-they ever more and more.

nu begunde in bedunken daz,

now began him to-seem that,

sî wâren entschumpfieret nâch.

they were routed nearly.

ze rosse wart im alsô gâch

to horse was to-him so hasty

2650 daz er des helmes vergaz.

that he of-the helm forgot.

mit blôzem houpte er ûf saz:

with bare head he up sat:

von geschichte begreif er

by chance grasped he

beide schilt unde sper.

both shield and spear.

dô wart niht langer gebiten:

then was not longer waited:

schône kom er in geriten

fairly came he in ridden

mit sîner baniere.

with his banner.

wære er niht schiere

were he not soon

den sînen ze helfe komen,

to-the his to help come,

sî müesten schaden hân genomen

they must harm have taken

unde enschumpfieret sîn.

and routed be.

daz was dar an wol schîn,

that was there by well evident,

sî wâren alle entwichen dan:

they were all withdrawn thence:

ze wer enthielt sich nieman

in defense held himself no-one

von al der massenê

of all the household

niuwan drê:

only three:

her Gâwein der edel man,

sir Gawein the noble man,

der doch nie lasters teil gewan

who yet never of-reproach part got

unde aller tugende wiet:

and of-all virtue ruled:

2655

2660

2665

fil Dou Gilules bî im hielt

son-of Dou Gilules by him held

2670 und Segremors: dise drî

and Segremors: these three

enthielten vaste wider sî.

held fast against them.

sî tâtenz dâ, wizzet daz,

they did-it there, know that,

sô nie drî ritter baz:

as never three knights better:

wan sî mit stichen noch mit slegen

for them with thrusts nor with blows

2675 von stete niemen moht erwegen.

from place anyone could move.

doch müestens sîn gevangen,

yet must-they be captured,

und wære daz ergangen

and would-have that happened

von der grôzen überkraft,

from the great superior-force,

diu aller dinge ist meisterschaft

which of-all things is mastery

2680 (wider sî niemen niht enmac),

(against it no-one anything can),

wan daz Êrec fil de roi Lac

but that Erec son of king Lac

schône in geriten kam,

fairly in ridden came,

als friunde an der nôt gezam,

as to-a-friend in the need befitted,

rehte sam des windes dôz.

right like the wind's roar.

sîn manheit was sô grôz

his manhood was so great

2685

daz er sî alle drâte

that he them all quickly

umbe gekêret hâte.

around turned had.

noch muoste erz enblanden

still must be-it entrust

grimme den handen,

grimly to-the hands,

sîn wære anders niht geschehen.

of-him would-have otherwise nothing happened.

2690

als ditz die sîne heten ersehen,

when this the his had seen,

nû kêrtens wider dâ zehant.

now turned-they back there at-once.

wider in justierte Boydurant.

against him jousted Boydurant.

den edeln ritter entsazte er

the noble knight unseated he

ouch mit sînem sper.

also with his spear.

2695

guot wort bejagete er dâ.

good word won he there.

die vîende enschumpfierte er sâ,

the enemies routed he straightway,

er eine in kurzer wîle

he alone in short while

wol driu teil einer mîle.

well three parts of-a mile.

- 2700 dar kom im sîn geselleschaft
there came to-him his company
 ze helfe mit ir kraft
to help with their strength
 und tâten se âne widerstrît
and drove them without resistance
 vaste unz an ir hâmt.
fast until at their barrier.
 daz dritte ros gap er hin.
the third horse gave he away.
- 2705 vil schœnen gewin
very fair gain
 hete sîn selleschaft begân,
had his company made,
 des ân in niht wære getân.
which without him not would-have-been done.
 sîn gnôz des tages manec man
of-him profited of-the day many-a man
 der von im dâ vil gewan.
who from him there much got.
- 2710 grôz was ir bejaget.
great was their booty.
 des wart im dô gnâde gesaget,
for-that was to-him then thanks said,
 und gezam sî deste mêre
and befitted them the more
 ze sprechen sîn êre.
to speak his honor.

dô dûhte von im vollen grôz

then seemed of him full great

daz er durch sîn houbet blôz

that he through his head bare

von ungewarheit niht vermeit

from unwariness not avoided

daz er schône in reit

that he fairly in rode

und sô genendeclîchen

and so daringly

die vînde tet entwîchen.

the enemies made withdraw.

Gâwein tet ez des tages dâ

Gawein did it of-the day there

guot als ouch anderswâ

good as also elsewhere

und nâch sîner gwonheit.

and after his custom.

diu was, sô man seit,

which was, as one says,

daz nimmer dehein man gesach,

that never any man saw,

swa ez im ze tuone geschach,

wherever it to-him to do happened,

daz man ritterschaft urborte,

that one knighthood practiced,

ern schine dâ ie in dem worte

unless-be shone there ever in the report

daz ez niemen fûr in tæte:

that it no-one before him did:

des ist sîn lop noch stæte.

of-that is his praise still constant.

vil ritterlîchen stuont sîn muot:

very knightly stood his spirit:

2715

2720

2725

2730

an im erschein niht wan guot:

in him appeared nothing but good:

rîch und edel was er gnuoc:

rich and noble was he enough:

sîn herze niemen nît entruoc.

his heart to-no-one envy bore.

er was getriuwe

he was faithful

2735 und milte âne riuwe,

and bountiful without rue,

stæte unde wol gezogen,

constant and well bred,

sîniu wort unbetrogen,

his words undeceitful,

stark schœne und manhaft.

strong handsome and manly.

an im was aller tugent kraft.

in him was of-all virtue strength.

2740 mit schœnen zûhten was er frô.

with fair courtesy was he glad.

der Wunsch het in gemeistert sô,

the Ideal had him mastered so,

als wirz mit wârheit haben vernomen,

as we-it with truth have heard,

daz nie man sô volkomen

that never man so perfect

an des kûnec Artûses hof bekam.

to the king Arthur's court came.

2745 wie wol er im ze gesinde zam!

how well he to-him as household befitted!

ûf êre leit er arbeit.

for honor bore he hardship.

vil grôze manheit

very great manhood

erzeiget er den tac:

showed he the day:

ân Êreken fil de roi Lac,

without Erec son of king Lac,

so bejaget dâ niemen mêre:

so won there no-one more:

2750

wan er bejagt dâ êre.

than he won there honor.

zwêne ritter vienger dâ zehant:

two knights captured-he there at-once:

der ein Ginses was genant,

the one Ginses was named,

der ander Gaudîn de Montein:

the other Gaudin de Montein:

dise vienc Gâwein.

these captured Gawain.

2755

Êrec fil de roi Lac

Erec son of king Lac

den lâze ich vor den einen tac;

him leave I before the one day;

fûrbaz engetar ich:

further dare-not I:

wan man saget, sîn gelich

for one says, his like

ze Britanje kœme nie:

to Britain came never:

2760

kom aber er dar ie,

came however he there ever,

daz mohte Êrec wol sîn:

that might Erec well be:

daz was an sînen tugenden schîn.

that was in his virtues evident.

dô dâ wâren in getân
when there were to-them done

2765 ir vînde, als ich gesaget hân,
their enemies, as I said have,

Êrec frâgen began
Erec to-ask began

ob her ûz dehein man
whether hither out any man

wolde justieren mêre
would joust more

durch sîner âmîen êre.
for his sweetheart's honor.

2770 dô sprach ein ritter zehant,
then said a knight at-once,

der was Royderodes genant,
who was Royderodes named,

daz er justieren wolde,
that he joust would,

ob ez mit fride wesen solde.
if it with peace he should.

des was Êrec frô:
of-that was Erec glad:

2775 fride gelobete er im dô.
peace promised he to-him then.

gegen im er ze velde reit,
toward him he to field rode,

wan er an sîner manheit
for he in his manhood

was vil unerværet:
was very unfrightened:

daz het er dicke bewæret.
that had he often proved.

2780 zuo ein ander was in ger.
to one another was to-them desire.

âne vælen zwelf sper

without missing twelve spears

vertet ir ietweder dâ.

used-up of-them each there.

nu erbeizt von sînem rosse sâ

now dismounted from his horse straightway

der tugenthafte Êrec

the virtuous Erec

unde gap daz enwec.

and gave it away.

ûf daz fünfte er dô saz:

upon the fifth he then sat:

bereite was ime daz.

ready was for-him that.

sîn earnest des gedâhte,

his earnestness of-that thought,

daz er ouch volbrâhte,

that he also accomplished,

er woldes niht mê sûmen,

he would-it not more delay,

bat ûf rûmen.

bade up clear-room.

daz sper er undern arm sluoc.

the spear he under-the arm put.

guot wille sî zesamne truoc.

good will them together bore.

nu erriet er in, daz ers enphant,

now hit he him, that he-it felt,

zen vier nageln gegen der hant.

at-the four nails near the hand.

alsô sêre er in stach

so sorely he him thrust

daz im daz fürbüege brach.

that to-him the breast-strap broke.

2785

2790

2795

darmgürtel und surzengel brast,
girth and surcingle burst,

sam ez wære ein fûlez bast.
as-if it were a rotten bast.

2800 im beleip ein swachez phant,
to-him remained a poor pledge,
 der zoum zerbrochen in der hant.
the bridle broken in the hand.

er viel dô im misselanc
he fell then to-him failed
 vom orse wol drir scheftelanc.
from-the horse well three shafts long.

daz er in dem satel gesaz,
that he in the saddle stayed-seated,

2805 vil sêre prîste Êrecken daz:
very sorely praised Erec that:

wand er het es êre.
for he had of-it honor.

dane was ze tuon niemêre.
there was to do nothing-more.

nû hâte der turnei ende.
now had the tournament end.

âne missewende
without discredit

2810 schiet diu massenîe dan.
parted the household thence.

Êrec der tugenthafte man
Erec the virtuous man

wart ze vollem lobe gesagt.
was to full praise spoken.

den prîs het er dâ bejagt,
the prize had he there won,

und den sô volleclichen

and that so fully

daz man begunde gelichen

that one began to-likem

2815

sînen wîstuom Salomône,

his wisdom to-Solomon,

an schœne Absalône,

in beauty to-Absalom,

an sterke Samsônes gnôz.

in strength Samson's equal.

sîn milte dûhte sî sô grôz,

his bounty seemed them so great,

diu gemâzte in niemen ander

that likened him no-one other

2820

wan dem milten Alexander.

but to-the bountiful Alexander.

sîn schilt was zerbrochen,

his shield was broken,

mit spern sô zerstochen,

with spears so pierced,

man hete fiuste derdurch geschoben.

one had fists there-through pushed.

sus verdiente Êrec sîn loben.

thus earned Erec his praise.

2825

dô daz mære ûz kam

when the tidings out came

und frouwe Ênite vernam

and lady Enite heard

sô grôze tugent zellen

so great virtue told

von Êrecke ir gesellen,

of Erec her comrade,

- 2830 dô was ir sîn manheit
then was to-her his manhood
 beide lieb unde leit.
both dear and grievous.
 daz ir liebes dran geschach,
what to-her of-joy there-in happened,
 daz was daz man im wol sprach;
that was that one of-him well spoke;
 daz sî leides dran gewan,
what she of-sorrow there-in got,
 2835 daz was, sî weste wol ir man
that was, she knew well her man
 in sô getânem muote,
in so made spirit,
 im enwolde got mit huote
him unless-would God with care
 gnædeclîchen bî stân,
graciously by stand,
 sô vorhte si in unlange hân,
so feared she him not-long to-have,
 2840 wan er den lîp ûf êre
for he the life for honor
 solde wâgen sêre,
should hazard sorely,
 und wande erz versuochte,
and for he-it attempted,
 sô ein zage enruochte
as a coward cared-not
 man spræche im übel oder guot.
one should-speak of-him ill or good.
 2845 ouch hete sich vil snelle ir muot
also had herself very quickly her spirit
 der zweier eines bewegen,
of-the two one resolved,

daz ir ze manne wære ein degen
that to-her for man were athane

lieber danne ein arger zage,
dearer than a base coward,

unde lie swache klage
and left weak lament

und was sîner manheit
and was of-his manhood

beide stolz unde gemeit.
both proud and glad.

2850

Karnant, and the Idle Days

XVI

Erec rides home with sixty companions, and King Lac receives the couple joyfully and makes them king and queen at Karnant. There Erec devotes himself so completely to Enite that he gives up knighthood, the court becomes joyless, and people blame her. One noon, thinking Erec asleep, she laments aloud. He hears and makes her explain. He then has her put on her best clothes, arms himself secretly, and rides away with her, forbidding her on pain of death to speak.

dô der turnei was ergân,
when the tournament was over,

der künec reit ûf Kardigân
the king rode to Kardigan

mit sîner massenîe.
with his household.

ir iegliches âmîe
of-them each's sweetheart

enphienc den ir mit freuden dô.
received the-one her-own with joy then.

2855

ouch tete alsô

also did so

diu frouwe Ênîte.

the lady Enite.

unlange zîte

not-long time

2860 beliben sî ze hove da.

remained they at court there.

urloubes gert er sâ

leave asked he straightway

von dem kûnege Artûse,

of the king Arthur,

ze rîten heim ze hûse

to ride home to house

in sînes vater lant:

into his father's land:

2865 daz was Destregâles gnant.

that was Destregales named.

des moht in dunken grôziu zît:

of-that might him seem great time:

wan er was dar niht komen sît

for he was thither not come since

daz er was ein kindelîn.

that he was a little-child.

wie möht es baz zît sîn?

how might of-it better time be?

2870 als im dô ze muote wart

when to-him then in mind became

umbe die heimvart,

about the homeward-journey,

dô nam er an sich

then took he to himself

sehze gesellen, dier gelich

sixty comrades, whom-he alike

zuo ime kleite

to himself clothed

unde wol bereite.

and well equipped.

2875

die fuort der tugenthafte man

them led the virtuous man

ze geselleschete dan.

for company thence.

sînen boten er sande

his messenger he sent

vor hinheim ze lande,

ahead home to land,

der ez sînem vater tæte kunt.

who it to-his father should-make known.

2880

ouch ranter dâ ze stunt

also ran-he there at once

hin gegen Karnant

thither toward Karnant

(sô was ir houbetstat genant),

(so was their capital named),

unde vant den künec dâ

and found the king there

und sagete im sâ

and told him straightway

2885

waz im sîn sun enbôt.

what to-him his son sent-word.

des enphienc er rîchez botenbrôt:

for-that received he rich messenger's-reward:

wan ez gelebte der künec Lac

for it lived the king Lac

nie frölichern tac

never more-joyful day

2890 danne den do er vernam

than that when he heard

daz im sîn lieber sun kam.

that to-him his dear son came.

er was rüemic unde frô.

he was boastful and glad.

vil drâte besanter dô

very quickly summoned-he then

beidiu mâge unde man,

both kinsmen and vassals,

2895 daz er fünf hundert gewan,

that he five hundred got,

und reit gegen im drî tage.

and rode toward him three days.

nâch der âventiure sage

according-to the adventure's saying

so enphiengens alle gelîche,

so received-they all alike,

und harte friuntlîche,

and very friendly,

2900 Êrecken mit sîm wîbe.

Erec with his woman.

ezn dorfte frouwen lîbe

it needed lady's person

baz erboten werden nie

better offered be never

danne ouch ir dô mans enphie.

than also her then one-her received.

- der alte künec Lac
the old king Lac
- vil grôzer freuden phlac: 2905
very great joy practiced:
- wan sî gâbn im beide
for they gave him both
- schœene ougenweide,
fair eye-feast,
- Êrec mit frowen Ênîten.
Erec with lady Enite.
- ze sweder sîner sîten
to whichever his side
- er sînhalp sach, sô frôuter sich: 2910
he on-his-side looked, so gladdened-be himself:
- wan ir beider lîp was wünneclich.
for their both body was delightful.
- sîn sun geviel im wol,
his son pleased him well,
- als einem man sîn kint sol,
as to-a man his child shall,
- des sun wol gerâten hât
whose son well turned-out has
- und alsô gar ze lobe stât: 2915
and so wholly to praise stands:
- doch geviel im frouwe Ênîte baz.
yet pleased him lady Enite better.
- wol bescheinde er in daz:
well showed he them that:
- er fuortes heim ze Karnant
he led-them home to Karnant
- unde gap sîn lant
and gave his land
- in ir beider gewalt, 2920
into their both power,

daz er ze kûnege wære gezalt
that he as king were counted

und daz sî wære kûnegîn:
and that she were queen:

er hiez sî beide gewaltec sîn.
he bade them both powerful be.

Êrec was biderbe unde guot,
Erec was valiant and good,

2925 ritterlîche stuont sîn muot,
knightly stood his spirit,

ê er wîp genæme
before he woman took

und hin heim kæme:
and thither home came:

nû sô er heim komen ist,
now when he home come is,

dô kêrter allen sînen list
then turned-he all his skill

2930 an frowen Ênîten minne.
to lady Enite's love.

sich vlizzen sîne sinne
themselves strove his senses

wier alle sîne sache
how-he all his affairs

wante ze gemache.
turned to comfort.

sîn site er wandeln began.
his custom he to-change began.

2935 als er nie wurde der man,
as-if he never became the man,

alsô vertreip er den tac.
so passed he the day.

des morgens er nider lac,
of-the morning he down lay,

daz er sîn wîp trûte,
that he his woman caressed,

unz daz man messe lûte.
until that one mass rang.

sô stuonden se ûf gelîche
then stood they up together

2940

vil müezeclîche.
very leisurely.

ze handen sî sich viengen,
by hands they each-other took,

zer kappeln sî giengen:
to-the chapel they went:

dâ was ir tweln alsô lanc
there was their tarrying so long

unz daz man messe gesanc.
until that one mass sang.

2945

ditz was sîn meistiu arbeit.
this was his greatest toil.

sô was der imbîz bereit.
then was the meal ready.

swie schiere man die tische ûf zôch,
however soon one the tables up drew,

mit sînem wîbe er dô flôch
with his woman he then fled

ze bette von den liuten.
to bed from the people.

2950

dâ huop sich aber triuten.
there raised itself again caressing.

von danne kam er aber nie
from thence came he again never

unz er ze naht ze tische gie.
until he at night to table went.

dô Êrec fil de roi Lac

when Erec son of king Lac

2955 ritterschefte sich bewac,

of-knighthood himself renounced,

der tugende er dannoch wielt,

the virtue he still possessed,

da er sich schône an behielt,

where he himself fairly in upheld,

swier keinen turnei suochte,

though-he no tournament sought,

daz er doch beruochte

that he yet provided-for

2960 sîne gesellen algelîche

his comrades all-alike

daz sî vil vollecliche

that they very fully

von in selben mohten varn.

of them selves could fare.

er hiez sî alsô wol bewarn

he bade them so well equip

als ob er selbe mit in rite.

as if he himself with them rode.

2965 ich lobe an im den selben site.

I praise in him the same custom.

Êrec wente sînen lîp

Erec accustomed his body

grôzes gmaches durch sîn wîp.

to-great comfort for his woman.

die minnet er sô sêre

her loved he so sorely

daz er aller êre

that he of-all honor

2970 durch sî einen verphlac,

for her alone neglected,

unz daz er sich sô gar verlac
until that he himself so wholly lay-idle

daz niemen dehein ahte
that no-one any esteem

ûf in gehalten mahte.
upon him have might.

dô began mit rehte
then began with right

ritter unde knehte
knights and servants

dâ ze hove betrâgen.
there at court to-weary.

die vordes freude phlâgen,
who before joy practiced,

die verdrôz vil sêre dâ,
them wearied very sorely there,

unde rûmten imz sâ:
and vacated to-him-it straightway:

wande ez hete wîp noch man
for it had woman nor man

deheinen zwîvel dar an,
any doubt there on,

er müeste sîn verdorben:
he must be ruined:

den lop heter erworben.
the praise had-he won.

ein wandelunge an im geschach:
a change in him happened:

daz man im ê sô wol sprach,
that one of-him before so well spoke,

daz verkêrte sich ze schanden
that turned itself to disgrace

wider die die in erkanden:
among those who him knew:

2975

2980

2985

in schalt diu werlt gar:

him reviled the world wholly:

sîn hof wart aller freuden bar

his court became of-all joy bare

2990 unde stuont nâch schanden:

and stood toward disgrace:

in dorfte ûz fremden landen

him needed out-of foreign lands

durch freude niemen suochen.

for joy no-one seek.

daz begunden fluochen

that began to-curse

die in an wunden

who him to belonged

2995 unde im guotes gunden.

and to-him good granted.

sî sprâchen alle 'wê der stunt

they said all 'woe the hour

daz uns mîn frouwe wart ie kunt!

that to-us my lady became ever known!

des verdirbet unser herre.'

of-that is-ruined our lord.'

disiu rede geschach sô verre

this speech happened so far

3000 daz sî die frouwen an kam.

that it the lady on came.

als sî den itewîz vernam,

when she the reproach heard,

des wart vil riuwic ir muot

for-that became very rueful her spirit

(wan sî was biderbe unde guot),

(for she was worthy and good),

und dâhte an manegen enden

and thought in many ends

wie sî möhte erwenden

how she might avert

alsô gemeinen haz.

so common hatred.

ouch ruochte sî erkennen daz

also deigned she to-recognize that

daz ez ir schult wære.

that it her guilt were.

si begunde dise swære

she began this grief

vil wîplîchen tragen.

very womanly to-bear.

Êrecke getorste siz niht klagen:

to-Erec dared she-it not lament:

sî vorhte in dâ verliesen mite.

she feared him there to-lose with.

nû kam ez alsô nâch ir site

now came it so after her custom

daz er umb einen mitten tac

that he about a mid day

an ir arme lac.

in her arms lay.

nu gezam des wol der sunnen schîn

now befitted of-it well the sun's shine

daz er dienest muoste sîn:

that it servant must be:

3005

3010

3015

wande er den gelieben zwein
for it on-the beloved two

durch ein vensterglas schein
through a window-glass shone

3020 und het die kemenâten
and had the chamber

lichtes wol berâten
with-light well provided

daz sî sich mohten undersehen.
that they each-other could see.

daz ir von fluochen was geschehen,
what to-her from curses was happened,

dâ begunde se denken an.
there began she to-think on.

3025 vil gâhes ruhte sî hin dan.
very quickly moved she away thence.

sî wânde daz er sliefe.
she thought that he slept.

ein sûft nam sî tiefe
a sigh took she deep

unde sach in vaste an.
and looked him hard at.

‘wê dir, dû vil armer man,
‘woe to-thee, thou very poor man,

3030 und mir ellendem wîbe,
and to-me wretched woman,

daz ich mînem lîbe
that I to-my person

sô manegen fluoch vernemen sol.’
so many-a curse bear shall.’

do vernam Êrec die rede wol.
then heard Erec the speech well.

als sî der rede het gedaget,
when she of-the speech had ceased,

Êrec sprach 'frouwe Ênîte, saget,
Erec said 'lady Enite, say,

3035

waz sint iuwer sorgen
what are your cares

die ir dâ klaget verborgen?'
which you there lament bidden?'

nû wolde sis gelougent hân.
now would she-of-it denied have.

er sprach 'lât die rede stân.
he said 'let the speech stand.

des nemet iu ein zil,
of-that take for-yourself a term,

3040

daz ich die rede wizen wil.
that I the speech know will.

ir müezet mir benamen sagen
you must to-me assuredly tell

waz ich iuch dâ hôte klagen,
what I you there heard lament,

daz ir mich sus habt verswigen.'
that you me thus have concealed.'

sî vorhte daz sî wurde gezigen
she feared that she should-be accused

3045

von im anderr dinge
by him of-other things

und seite imz mit gedinge
and told him-it with condition

daz er ir daz gehieze
that he to-her that should-promise

daz erz âne zorn lieze.
that he-it without anger should-let.

- 3050 als er vernam diu mære,
when he heard the tidings,
 waz diu rede wære,
what the speech were,
 er sprach 'der rede ist gnuoc getân.'
he said 'of-the speech is enough done.'
 zehant hiez er sî ûf stân,
at-once bade he her up stand,
 daz sî sich wol kleite
that she herself well clothed
- 3055 unde an leite
and put on
 daz beste gewæte
the best clothing
 daz sî iender hæte.
that she anywhere had.
 sînen knaben er seite
his squires he told
 daz man im sîn ros bereite
that one for-him his horse prepare
- 3060 und ir phârt der frowen Ênîten.
and her palfrey the lady Enite's.
 er sprach er wolde rîten
he said he would ride
 ûz kurzwîlen.
out for-pastime.
 des gunden sî dô îlen.
to-that began they then to-hasten.
 dô wâpent er verholne
then armed he secretly
- 3065 sich unde truoc verstolne
himself and bore stealthily
 under der wât sîn îsengwant.
under the clothing his armor.

sînen helm er ûf bant

his helm he up bound

über daz houbet alsô blôz.

over the head so bare.

sîn vlîz was ze helne grôz.

his diligence was to hide great.

er tet alsam der karge sol:

he did as the crafty shall:

3070

er sprach 'mîn helm ist niht wol.

he said 'my helm is not well.

mirst lieb daz ich ez hân ersehen:

to-me-is dear that I it have seen:

und wære mir sîn nôt geschehen,

and were to-me of-it need happened,

sô wære ich gar geirret.

so were I wholly hindered.

ich sage iu waz im wirret:

I tell you what it ails:

3075

man sol in baz riemen.'

one shall it better strap.'

dô was aber niemen

then was however no-one

der sich des mohte verstân

who himself of-that could understand

wie sîn gemüete was getân.

how his spirit was made.

ab einer want nam er

from a wall took he

3080

beide schilt unde sper

both shield and spear

und begunde kreijieren,

and began to-cry-the-war-cry,

als er wolde buhurdieren.

as-if he would buhurt.

ritter unde knehte

knights and servants

3085 wolden sam mit rehte

would likewise with right

mit ir herren rîten:

with their lord ride:

dô hiez er sî dâ bîten.

then bade he them there wait.

gein kuchen sante er zestunt

to kitchen sent he at-once

daz man den köchen tæte kunt

that one to-the cooks should-make known

3090 daz sî des war næmen,

that they of-it heed should-take,

swie schiere daz sî kæmen,

however soon that they came,

daz in daz ezzen wære bereit.

that for-them the food were ready.

mit solher rede er ûz reit

with such speech he out rode

und gebôt sîm wîbe

and commanded his woman

3095 niuwan bî dem lîbe,

only by the life,

der schœnen frouwen Ênîten,

the fair lady Enite,

daz sî muose fûr rîten,

that she must ahead ride,

und gebôt ir daz zestunt

and commanded her that at-once

daz ze sprechene ir munt

lest for speaking her mouth

3100 ze der reise iht ûf kæme,

on the journey at-all open should-come,

swaz sî vernæme

whatever she heard

od iender gesæhe.

or anywhere saw.

dise kumberlîche spæhe

this troublesome subtlety

muoste sî geloben dô:

had-to she promise then:

wan sî vorhte sîne drô.

for she feared his threat.

3105

The Three Robbers

XVII

Enite rides ahead, and in a forest she sees three robbers who plan to kill Erec and take her. After agonizing over whether to break his command, she warns him. He kills all three but rebukes her for disobeying and says that women always want what is forbidden. She begs his forgiveness, and he makes her lead the robbers' horses as his servant for the rest of the journey.

nû riten sî beide

now rode they both

nû holz nû heide,

now wood now heath,

unz daz sî der tac verlie.

until that them the day left.

dô diu naht ane gie

when the night on came

(schône schein der mâne),

(fairly shone the moon),

nâch âventiure wâne

after adventure's expectation

reit der guote kneht Êrec.

rode the good warrior Erec.

3110

nû wîste sî der wec

now led them the way

in einen kreftigen walt:

into a mighty forest:

3115 den hâten mit gewalt

which held with force

drîe roubære.

three robbers.

zwâre swer in wære

truly whoever them were

ze den zîten widerriten

at the times encountered

dem sî möhten hân gestriten,

with-whom they could have fought,

3120 sô hâten sî den wec behuot

so had they the way guarded

daz si im umbe daz guot

that they from-him for the goods

næmen êre unde lîp.

would-take honor and life.

die ersach von êrste daz wîp,

them saw at first the woman,

wan sî verre vor reit.

for she far ahead rode.

3125 ditz was ir êrstez herzeleit

this was her first heart-sorrow

daz ir ze der verte geschach:

that to-her on the journey happened:

wan sî an ir gebærden sach

for she in their bearing saw

daz sî roubære wâren.

that they robbers were.

sî wolt imz mit gebâren

she would to-him-it with gestures

gerne kunt haben getân.

gladly known have made.

dône moht ers niht verstân,

then could he-it not understand,

ouch het ers selbe niht ersehen:

also had he-it himself not seen:

des was im nâch schade geschehen.

of-that was to-him nearly harm happened.

frouwe Ênîte wart dô

lady Enite became then

beide trûric unde unfrô:

both sad and unglad:

wande sî sach die freise,

for she saw the peril,

daz sî vorhte werden wise

that she feared to-become bereft

des aller liebsten man

of-the of-all dearest man

den ie frouwe gewan:

whom ever lady got:

wan ez stuont im angestlîchen.

for it stood for-him fearfully.

waz möhte sich gelîchen

what might itself be-likened

sô nâhen gênder riuwe

to-so near going rue

die sî durch ir triuwe

which she for her faithfulness

und durch ir mannes liebe leit?

and for her husband's love suffered?

3130

3135

3140

3145 dô si in solhem zwîvel reit,
when she in such doubt rode,

ob si imz torste gesagen
whether she to-him-it dared tell

oder solde gedagen,
or should be-silent,

nû rette si in ir muote
now spoke she in her spirit

‘rîcher got der guote,
‘mighty God the good-one,

3150 ze dînen gnâden suoche ich rât:
to thy grace seek I counsel:

dû weist aleine wiez mir stât.
thou knowest alone how-it to-me stands.

mîner sorgen der ist vil:
of-my cares they are many:

wan mir ein unsenftez spil
for to-me a harsh game

in einer sô kurzen frist
in a so short time

3155 ze gâhes vor geteilet ist.
too suddenly before dealt is.

nû kan ichz wægest niht ersehen
now can I-it best not see

(waz sol mir armen geschehen?),
(what shall to-me poor-one happen?),

wan swederz ich mir kiese
for whichever I for-myself choose

daz ich doch verliese.
that I yet lose.

3160 warne ich mînen lieben man,
(if)-warn I my dear man,

dâ nim ich schaden an:
there take I harm in:

wan sô hân ich den lîp verlorn.

for so have I the life lost.

wirt aber diu warnunge verborn,

(if)-becomes however the warning forborne,

daz ist mîns gesellen tôt.

that is my comrade's death.

jâ ist einer solhen nôt

indeed is for-a such distress

3165

wîbes herze ze kranc.'

woman's heart too weak.'

nû kam der muot in ir gedanc

now came the purpose into her thought

'bezzer ist verlorn mîn lîp,'

'better is lost my life,'

ein als unklagebære wîp,

a so unlamentable woman,

danne ein alsô vorder man:

than a so eminent man:

3170

wan dâ verlûr maneger an.

for there would-lose many-a-one in.

er ist edel und rîche:

he is noble and rich:

wir wegen ungelîche.

we weigh unequally.

für in wil ich sterben

for him will I die

ê ich in sihe verderben,

before I him see perish,

3175

ez ergê mir swie got welle.

it befall me as God will.

ez ensol mîn geselle

it shall my comrade

daz leben sô niht enden

the life so not end

unz ich ez mac erwenden.'

while I it can avert.'

3180 her umbe sî zuo im sach

hither around she to him looked

vorhtlichen unde sprach

fearfully and spoke

'sich ûf, lieber herre,

'look up, dear lord,

ûf genâde verre

upon mercy far

wil ich dir durch triuwe sagen

will I to-thee for faithfulness say

3185 (dînen schaden mag ich niht verdagen),

(thy harm can I not conceal),

dir sint ritter nâhen bî

to-thee are knights near by

die dir schadent, mugen sî.

who thee harm, (if)-can they.

unser herre sî der dich ner.'

our Lord be who thee save.'

dô sazte Êrec sich ze wer.

then set Erec himself to defense.

3190 nû sprach ein roubære

now said a robber

'ich sage iu liebiu mære

'I tell you dear tidings

dâ von uns wol mac geschehen'

there from to-us well may happen'

(der hâte sî von êrste ersehen):

(he had them at first seen):

‘ich sihe dort rîten einen man:

I see yonder riding a man:

als ich ez verre kiesen kan,

as I it far discern can,

er fûeret eine frouwen.

he leads a lady.

ir muget wol schouwen,

you may well behold,

an ir guote sint sî rîch:

in their goods are they rich:

ir kleider sint hêrlîch:

their clothes are lordly:

hie endet unser armuot:

here ends our poverty:

mich dunkt, sî fûerent michel guot.

me seems, they carry much goods.

nû sult ir herren sîn gemant,

now shall you lords be reminded,

daz iu diu triuwe sî erkant,

that to-you the faith be known,

waz wir under uns gelobet hân,

what we among us promised have,

und sult mir die wal lân

and shall to-me the choice leave

an disem roube,

of this booty,

und daz mir erloube

and that to-me allow

von iu iuwer beider munt

from you your both mouth

die êrsten just hie zestunt

the first joust here at-once

diu wider den ritter sol geschehen:

which against the knight shall happen:

3195

3200

3205

3210

wan ich sî von êrste hân gesehen.

for I them at first have seen.

ist daz ich im benim den lîp,

(if)-is that I from-him take the life,

so wil ich niuwan daz wîp:

so will I only the woman:

sîner habe ger ich niht mêre.'

of-his possessions desire I not more.'

3215 dô gewerten si in der êre.

then granted they him the honor.

den schilt er dô ze halse nam.

the shield he then to neck took.

als im Êrec nâhen kam,

when to-him Erec near came,

daz ros nam er mit den sporn:

the horse took he with the spurs:

er sprach 'herre, ir habt verlorn

he said 'lord, you have lost

3220 beide lîp unde guot.'

both body and goods.'

Êrec durch sînen grimmen muot

Erec for his grim spirit

im kein antwurten bôt

to-him no answering offered

und stach in von dem rosse tôt.

and thrust him from the horse dead.

sîne selln in wolten grochen hân:

his comrades him would avenged have:

3225 den wart alsam getân.

to-them was likewise done.

in wâren bein und arme blôz:

to-them were legs and arms bare:

des Êrec an dem sige genôz:

of-that Erec in the victory profited:

sî wârn gewâfent slehte,
they were armed simply,

nâch der roubær rehte:
after the robbers' right:

daz was Êrecke guot.
that was to-Erec good.

3230

ir ieglich het ein îsenhuot
of-them each had an iron-bat

zuo einem panziere:
with a mail-coat:

des het er sî schiere
of-that had he them soon

zuo ein ander geleit.
to one another laid.

dô im von sîner frûmekeit
when to-him from his prowess

3235

alsô rehte wol geschach,
so right well happened,

ze der frowen Ênîten er dô sprach
to the lady Enite he then spoke

‘wie nû, ir wunderlîchez wîp?
‘how now, you wondrous woman?’

jâ verbôt ich iu an den lîp
indeed forbade I you on the life

daz ir niht ensoldet sprechen:
that you not should speak:

3240

wer hiez iuch daz gebot brechen?
who bade you the command break?

daz ich von wîben hân vernomen,
what I from women have heard,

daz ist wâr, des bin ich komen
that is true, of-that am I come

wol an ein ende hie:
well to an end here:

3245 swaz man in unz her noch ie
whatever one to-them until now yet ever

alsô tiure verbôt,
so dearly forbade,

dar nâch wart in alsô nôt
there after became to-them so need

daz siz muosten bekorn.
that they-it must try.

ez ist doch vil gar verlorne
it is yet very wholly lost

3250 swaz man iuch mîden heizet,
whatever one you avoid bids,

wan daz ez iuch reizet
but that it you provokes

daz irz niht muget vermîden:
that you-it not can avoid:

des sult ir laster lîden.
for-that shall you reproach suffer.

swaz ein wîp nimer getæte,
whatever a woman never would-do,

3255 der irz nimer verboten hæte,
(if)-one to-her-it never forbidden bad,

niht langer sî daz verbirt
not longer she that forgoes

wan unz ez ir verboten wirt:
but until it to-her forbidden becomes:

son mac sis langer niht verlân.
so can she-it longer not leave.'

'herre, hete ichz niht getân
'lord, bad I-it not done

3260 durch iuwers lîbes gwarheit,
for your person's safety,

ich hete ez iu nie geseit.
I would-have it to-you never said.

ich tetez durch mîne triuwe.

I did-it for my faithfulness.

welt ir nû daz ez mich riuwe,

(if)-will you now that it me rue,

so vergebet mirz durch iuwer êre.

so forgive me-it for your honor.

ez geschiht mir nimmer mêre.'

it happens to-me never more.'

er sprach 'frowe, daz sî getân.

he said 'lady, that be done.

ich wil ditz ungerochen lân.

I will this unavenged leave.

ob ez iu immer mêre geschiht,

if it to-you ever more happens,

ich vertrage ez iu niht.

I tolerate it to-you not.

doch enkumt iuz niht ze heile:

yet comes to-you-it not to weal:

ich riche mich an einem teile.

I avenge myself in a part.

ich lâze iuch niht under wegen,

I leave you not by-the way,

ir müezet der rosse phlegen

you must the horses tend

wol unde rehte.

well and rightly.

ich wil iwer ze knehte

I will of-you as servant

ze dirre reise niht entwesen.'

on this journey not be-without.'

'herre mîn, daz sol wesen'

'lord my, that shall be'

sprach diu vil guote,

said the very good-one,

3265

3270

3275

wan ez sî niht enmuote.

for it her not grieved.

3280 vil wîplîchen sî dô leit

very womanly she then bore

dise ungelernet arbeit,

this unlearned toil,

und dar zuo swaz ir geschach

and there to whatever to-her happened

an ir herzen ungemach.

in her heart's discomfort.

der rosse sî sich underwant,

of-the horses she herself undertook,

3285 die zoume nam sî in ir hant

the bridles took she in her hand

und reit vor an den wec.

and rode ahead on the way.

ditz gebôt Êrec.

this commanded Erec.

der phârde sî dô phlac

of-the palfreys she then took-care

dar nâch als ein frouwe mac:

there after as a lady can:

3290 baz sî enkunde.

better she could-not.

The Five Robbers

XVIII

Soon five more robbers, partners of the first three, lie in wait and divide Enite, the horses, and Erec's armor among themselves in advance. Enite again struggles with herself and warns Erec, who kills all five. He threatens her more harshly, and she must now lead eight horses, a task she bears meekly, helped by Lady Fortune and God's courtesy. At dawn they leave the forest and see a castle belonging to a rich count, with a market town below it.

sâ zuo der stunde

straightway at the hour

kûme eine wîle,

scarcely a while,

niuwan drî mîle,

only three miles,

riten sî beide

rode they both

ê daz ir aber leide

before that to-her again sorrow

von sorgen geschach:

from cares happened:

wan sî vor ir ligen sach

for she before her lying saw

fünf roubære.

five robbers.

3295

man saget daz ez wære
one says that it were

3300 ein selleschaft under in
a fellowship among them

und daz sî teilten ir gewin
and that they shared their gain

mit den die Êrec het erslagen,
with those whom Erec had slain,

* * *

(lacuna)

dise fûnve und jene drî man
these five and those three men

3305 von den ich iu vor gesagt hân
of whom I to-you before told have

die heten den walt in ir phlege
they had the forest in their keeping

unde lâgen bî dem wege,
and lay by the way,

swer die einen vermite,
whoever the one avoided,

daz er den anderen rite.
that he the others rode-into.

3310 Êrec was für die drî komen
Erec was past the three come

mit êren, als ir habt vernomen:
with honor, as you have heard:

als er dô disen nâhen kam,
when he then to-these near came,

als sîn der eine war genam,
when of-him the one heed took,

da er verre von den andern lac
where he far from the others lay

3315 und er der schiltwahte phlac,
and he the shield-watch kept,

sîns zuorîtens was er frô.

of-his riding-up was he glad.

ze sînen sellen sprach er dô

to his comrades said he then

‘gehabt iuch frœliche,

‘bear yourselves joyfully,

wir werden alle rîche.

we become all rich.

ich sihe liute rîten

I see people riding

den wir wol gestrîten.

whom we well overcome.

ez ist niuwan ein man.

it is only one man.

als ich ez kiesen kan,

as I it discern can,

er fûert ein ritterlîchez wîp:

he leads a knightly woman:

der ist bekumbert ir lîp:

to-her is burdened her person:

sî fûert driu ros an der hant:

she leads three horses at the hand:

sî ist, hân ich ez rehte erkant,

she is, (if)-have I it rightly known,

dem ambet ungezæme.

to-the office unsuited.

mich wundert wâ er næme

me wonders where he should-take

sô seltsænen schiltkneht.

so strange shield-bearer.

man sol sim nemen, daz ist reht.

one shall her-from-him take, that is right.

als ich ez verre mac gespehen,

as I it far can espy,

3320

3325

3330

ich hân nie schoener wîp gesehen.

I have never fairer woman seen.

ir herren, die sult ir mir lân:

you lords, her shall you to-me leave:

3335 wan ich sî von êrste ersehen hân.'

for I her at first seen have.'

dô sprâchen se alle gelîche,

then said they all alike,

sî wurde im billîche.

she should-become his rightfully.

'vernemet' sprach ein sîn selle

'bear' said a his comrade

'waz ich des roubes welle:

'what I of-the booty want:

3340 niuwan sîn îsengewant.'

only his armor.'

die andern teilten dâ zehant

the others shared there at-once

diu fünf ros under sich.

the five horses among themselves.

daz was doch ungenædeclich:

that was yet ungracious:

wande ez diente von rehte

for it served by right

3345 Êrecke dem guoten knehte:

to-Erec the good warrior:

er kunde es wol geniezen.

he could of-it well enjoy.

ouch vluren sî ir liezen.

also lost they their lots.

Êrecke was diu rede unkunt.

to-Erec was the speech unknown.

nu bereit sich einer dâ ze stunt

now readied himself one there at once

gegen im dâ er in sach.

against him where he him saw.

3350

vil sorclîchen ungemach

very anxious discomfort

frouwe Ênîte gewan.

lady Enite got.

si gedâhte 'warne ich mînen man,

she thought '(if)-warn I my man,

sô briche ich aber sîn gebot.

so break I again his command.

er lâtz durch êre noch durch got,

he leaves-it for honor nor for God,

3355

er enneme mir den lîp.

he unless-take from-me the life.

owê ich sældenlôsez wîp!

alas I fortuneless woman!

wære ich nû niuwan tô

were I now only dead

(daz næme ich für dise nô),

(that would-take I for this distress),

sô wær mir verre baz geschehen.

so were to-me far better happened.

3360

sol ich den slahen sehen

(if)-shall I him slain see

der mich von grôzer armuot

who me from great poverty

ze frowen schuof über michel guot

to lady made over great goods

dâ von ich schône geêret bin

there from I fairly honored am

3365 (ich heize ein rîchiu künegin),

(I am-called a rich queen),

daz sol mich geriuwen:

that shall me grieve:

wan sô muoz von untriuwen

for so must from faithlessness

mîn sêle verderben

my soul perish

und von rehte ersterben

and by right die

3370 glîche mit dem lîbe.

equally with the body.

got, rât mir armen wîbe

God, counsel me poor woman

wie ich ez ane vâhe

how I it on take

daz ich mich niht vergâhe.

that I myself not overbaste.

ich wæn ez solde verdagen.

I think it should keep-silent.

3375 entriuwen niht, ich sol imz sagen:

truly not, I shall to-him-it say:

ze swelher nôt ez mir ergê,

to whatever distress it to-me befall,

ez wirt gewâget alsam ê.'

it becomes risked likewise before.'

vil drâte sî hin umbe sach

very quickly she thither around looked

zÊrecke sî mit vorhten sprach

to-Erec she with fear spoke

‘herre, durch got vernim mich:

‘lord, for God hear me:

3380

bewar ez oder man sleht dich.

guard it or one slays thee.

ich sihe fünf gesellen

I see five comrades

die dich slahen wellen.’

who thee slay will.’

als schiere sî imz seite,

as soon-as she to-him-it said,

ze wer er sich bereite.

to defense he himself prepared.

3385

ir einer het sich ûz genomen

of-them one had himself out taken

und was den andern fürkomen,

and was the others come-before,

daz er justierte wider in,

that he jousted against him,

ûf sîn selbes ungewin:

to his own loss:

wan in stach Êrec fil de roy Lac

for him thrust Erec son of king Lac

3390

daz er underm orse tôt lac.

that he under-the horse dead lay.

dannoch wârn ir viere;

still were of-them four;

der einen er schiere

of-whom one he soon

ouch tôten vome rosse stach

also dead from-the horse thrust

3395 unde daz sîn sper zerbrach.

and that his spear broke.

do enblient erz dem swerte.

then entrusted he-it to-the sword.

der strît unlange werte:

the fight not-long lasted:

er begunde vellen

he began to-fell

die drî zir gesellen.

the three to-their comrades.

3400 alsô dô der eine man

when then the one man

den fünven sige an gewan

the five victory over won

unde er wolde rîten,

and he would ride,

er sprach ze frowen Ênîten

he said to lady Enite

‘sagt, ir wîp vil ungezogen,

‘say, you woman very ill-bred,

3405 war umbe habt ir aber gelogen?

what for have you again lied?

wan ich ez iu von êrste vertruoc,

for I it to-you at first tolerated,

nû dûhte iuch dar an niht genuoc,

now seemed to-you there in not enough,

irn tâtets aber mêre.

unless-you did-it again more.

und möhte dehein êre

and might any honor

man an wîbe begân,

one on woman win,

3410

ez solde niht sô ringe stân,

it should not so lightly stand,

ich næme iu hie zehant den lîp.'

I would-take from-you here at-once the life.'

'gnâde, herre!' sprach daz wîp

'mercy, lord!' said the woman

'ir sult mich des geniezen lân

'you shall me of-it profit let

daz ichz durch triuwe hân getân.

that I-it for faithfulness have done.

3415

noch dulde ich baz iuwer zorn

yet endure I better your anger

dan iuwer lîp wære verlorn.

than your life were lost.

swaz mir nû von iu geschiht,

whatever to-me now from you happens,

und hæte ich gebiten iht,

and had I waited at-all,

herre, sô wâret ir erslagen.

lord, so were you slain.

3420

nû wil ich immer gerne dagen.

now will I ever gladly be-silent.

nû vergebet mir ditz durch got:

now forgive me this for God:

zerbriche ich mêre iwer gebot,

(if)-break I more your command,

daz rechet dâ zestunt.'

that avenge there at-once.'

Êrec sprach 'frouwe, ich tuon iu kunt,

Erec said 'lady, I make to-you known,

3425

ir gewinnt an iuerm strîte
you win in your strife

niuwan übele zîte:
only evil times:

ir blîbt niht râche gar frî.
you remain not of-vengeance wholly free.

swies danne iu gedâht sî,
however-it then for-you intended be,

3430 sô muoz ez iu ergân.
so must it to-you go.

ich wil iuch ze knehte hân
I will you as servant have

die wîl wir sîn ûf disem wege.
the while we are on this way.

nû nemet diu ros in iuwer phlege
now take the horses in your keeping

und bewart sî alsô schône
and guard them so fairly

3435 daz ich iu mit übel iht lône:
lest I you with ill at-all reward:

und wirt einez verlorn,
and (if)-becomes one lost,

ir müezet dulden den zorn
you must endure the anger

des ir gerne enbæret,
which you gladly would-forgo,

ob ir wîse wæret.
if you wise were.'

3440 frouwe Ênîte nam dô diu.
lady Enite took then those.

vordes wâren ir driu:
before were of-them three:

nû wurden aller ahte.
now became of-all eight.

sî fuorte se als sî mahte:

she led them as she could:

sî kunde niht wol dâ mite.

she knew not well there with.

swie verre ez wider frouwen site

however far it against lady's custom

3445

und wider ir rehte wære,

and against her right were,

sî leit ez âne swære

she bore it without grief

mit senftem gemüete:

with gentle spirit:

daz lêrte sî ir güete.

that taught her her goodness.

diu frouwe grôzen kumber leit,

the lady great affliction suffered,

3450

wan daz sî ze liebe ir leit

but that she to love her sorrow

in ir herzen verkêrte,

in her heart turned,

als sî ir diemuot lêrte.

as her her humility taught.

swer ez rehte ahten wil,

whoever it rightly heed will,

sô hæten dar an harte vil

so would-have there in very much

3455

ze tuone vier knehte,

to do four servants,

solden sî ze rehte

should they by right

aht ros füeren unde bewarn,

eight horses lead and guard,

dâ sî eine muoste mite varn.

where she alone had-to with fare.

- 3460 wan daz frou Sælde ir was bereit
but that lady Fortune to-her was ready
 und daz diu gotes hövescheit
and that the God's courtesy
 ob mîner frouwen swebte
over my lady hovered
 und dâ wider strebte
and there against strove
 daz ir dehein grôz ungemach
that to-her no great discomfort
- 3465 von den rossen niene geschach,
from the horses at-all happened,
 sô wære kumberlîch ir vart:
so were troublesome her journey:
 des wart diu frouwe wol bewart.
of-that was the lady well guarded.
 ouch muosten durch ein solhen kneht
also must for a such servant
 diu ros gerne und durch reht
the horses gladly and for right
- 3470 ir ungestüemez streben lân
their violent striving leave
 und senfteclîchen mite gân.
and gently along go.
 dô begundens balde
then began-they quickly
 gân von dem walde:
to-hasten from the forest:
 vil schône der tac ûf gie.
very fairly the day up went.
- 3475 als sî dô diu naht verlie,
when them then the night left,

dô sach für sich Êrec

then saw before himself Erec

wâ in wîste der wec

where him led the way

zeinem hûs niht verre,

to-a castle not far,

dâ des landes herre,

where the land's lord,

ein rîcher grâve, ûfe saz.

a rich count, up-on sat.

nû wârn sî beide âne maz

now were they both without measure

alle die naht geriten

all the night ridden

und hâten kumber erliten.

and had affliction suffered.

des hûses wâren sî frô,

of-the castle were they glad,

wande sî gedâhten dô

for they thought then

dâ ze ruowen über tac

there to rest over day

in eim markte der dar under lac.

in a market-town which there below lay.

sî begunden gâhen

they began to-hasten

dâ sî den market sâhen.

where they the market saw.

3480

3485

The Squire, and the Count

XIX

They meet a squire carrying food, who invites them to eat. Erec rewards him with one of the horses, but he refuses the squire's offer to lead the other horses for Enite. The squire reports to his lord, the count, that a beautiful lady is coming, and the count goes out to meet them. He invites them to his castle, but Erec declines, saying they are too tired, and they ride on to find lodging in the town.

- 3490 nû bekam in ûf dem wege
now met them on the way
- ein knabe, der het in sîner phlege
a squire, who had in his keeping
- gesoten schultern unde brôt,
boiled shoulders and bread,
- in gewunden, als man im gebôt,
in wrapped, as one him commanded,
- unde bewart ze vlîze
and guarded with diligence
- 3495 in eine tweheln wîze:
in a cloth white:
- ein kandel fuort er an der hant
a can carried he at the hand
- mit wîne. wem ditz wart gesant,
with wine. to-whom this was sent,
- des enist mir niht geseit.
that is to-me not told.
- dô dirre knabe zuo reit,
when this squire toward rode,
- 3500 ze vlîze begunde er schouwen
with diligence began he to-look-at
- die bekumberten frouwen.
the burdened lady.

ir gevertes in grôz wunder nam.
of-her going him great wonder took.

als er zuo ir geriten kam,
when he to her ridden came,

sî gruozte in vil schône:
she greeted him very fairly:

dô neig er ir ze lône.
then bowed he to-her in reward.

3505

fûrbaz wîste in der wec.
further led him the way.

nû gap im Êrec
now gave him Erec

mit gruoze guoten morgen,
with greeting good morning,

under helme verborgen.
under helm bidden.

der knabe an im dô wol sach
the squire in him then well saw

3510

daz er grôzen ungemach
that he great discomfort

die naht het erliten
the night had suffered

und gewâfent was geriten,
and armed was ridden,

und bewegeete in ir arbeit.
and moved him their hardship.

‘herre, und wære ez iu niht leit,
‘lord, and were it to-you not grievous,

3515

ich frâgete iuch mære
I would-ask you tidings

war iuwer wille wære.
whither your will were.

sagt mirz durch iuwer diemuot:
tell me-it for your humility:

ich frâge iuch niuwan durch guot.

I ask you only for good.

3520 mich dunket ir sît gast hie;

me seems you are guest here;

sô was ich in dem lande ie

so was I in the land ever

unde bin des grâven knecht.

and am the count's servant.

mich dunket fuoge unde reht

me seems fitting and right

und bite iuch des verre

and ask you of-that greatly

3525 daz von iu mân herre

that by you my lord

dâ mite sî geêret

there with be honored

daz ir ûf sîn hûs kêret

that you to his house turn

und geruot nâch iuwer arbeit:

and rest after your hardship:

man ist iu dienstes dâ bereit.

one is to-you of-service there ready.

3530 unde bite iuch mêre

and ask you more

durch gotes êre:

for God's honor:

mich dunket daz ir habt gestriten

me seems that you have fought

und grôze arbeit erliten:

and great hardship suffered:

und twinge iuch dehein hungernôt
and (if)-compels you any hunger-need

(ich fûer hie schultern unde brôt
(I carry here shoulders and bread

3535

unde vil guoten wîn),
and very good wine),

nû lâtz in iuvern hulden sîn,
now let-it in your favor be,

und heizt die frouwen bîten
and bid the lady wait

unde wider rîten,
and back ride,

und enbîzet hie an dirre stat.'
and eat here at this place.'

3540

er tet als in der knabe bat.
he did as him the squire asked.

des was der kneht frô.
of-that was the servant glad.

hin fûr zer frouwen îlte er dô,
thithier ahead to-the lady hastened he then,

daz er ir diu ros enphie.
that he from-her the horses received.

wider zir sellen sî dô gie.
back to-her comrade she then went.

3545

der kneht diu ros zesamne bant:
the servant the horses together tied:

dar zuo leit er sîn gewant.
there to laid he his garment.

sînen huot nam er in die hant
his hat took he in the hand

und gienc dâ er wazzer vant.
and went where he water found.

- 3550 in beiden er sô vil truoc
to-them both he so much carried
 daz man hende getwuoc.
that one hands washed.
 die tweheln leite er ûf daz gras:
the cloth laid he upon the grass:
 dar ûf die spîse diu dâ was,
there upon the food which there was,
 fleisch brôt unde wîn:
meat bread and wine:
- 3555 es mohte nie mêre sîn.
of-it could never more be.
 als sî dô gnuoc âzen
when they then enough ate
 und wider ûf gesâzen,
and again up sat,
 Êrec sprach ze dem knehte
Erec said to the servant
 'knabe, ir sult von rehte
'squire, you shall by right
- 3560 etelîchen lôn enphân
some reward receive
 des ir zuo uns habt getân.
for-what you to us have done.
 ir habt minne wol versolt.
you have love well earned.
 nû hân ich silber noch golt
now have I silver nor gold
 dâ ich iu gelône mite:
there I you reward with:
- 3565 selle, nû tuot des ich iuch bite,
comrade, now do what I you ask,

unde nemet die wal

and take the choice

under der rosse zal,

among the horses' number,

ein daz iu daz liebste sî.

one that to-you the dearest be.

unde sît gewis dâ bî,

and be sure there of,

kumt uns immer der tac

(if)-comes to-us ever the day

daz ich iuch baz gehandeln mac,

that I you better treat can,

des gebrist iu niht an mir:

of-that lacks to-you not in me:

daz phärt sult nemen ir

the palfrey shall take you

durch unser beider bete.'

for our both request.'

der knabe daz vil gerne tete.

the squire that very gladly did.

er hetes im elliū gegeben,

he would-have-them to-him all given,

wan daz der frouwen leben

but that the lady's life

dâ mite gesenftet wære:

there with eased were:

er lie'z durch ir swære.

he left-it for her grief:

als er dô ein ros genam

when he then a horse took

des in aller beste gezam,

which him of-all best befitted,

dô gnâdet er im verre.

then thanked he him greatly.

3570

3575

3580

er sprach 'lieber herre,

he said 'dear lord,

nu gewert mich des ich iuch bite

now grant me what I you ask

3585 (dâ handelt ir mich wol mite),

(there treat you me well with),

diu frouwe lîdet arbeit,

the lady suffers hardship,

mit disen rossen michel leit,

with these horses great sorrow,

daz ich sî fûeren müeze:

that I them lead may:

der dienest ist mir süeze.'

the service is to-me sweet.'

3590 Êrec sprach 'knabe, daz sult ir lân.

Erec said 'squire, that shall you leave.

jâ ist ez doch niht getân

indeed is it yet not done

gar âne sache.

wholly without cause.

sî muoz mit ungemache

she must with discomfort

leben ze disen zîten.'

live at these times.'

3595 er sprach 'sô wil ich rîten.'

he said 'so will I ride.'

'got vergelte iu, knabe guot:

'God repay you, squire good:

iwer êre sî von im behuot,

your honor be by him guarded,

daz ir mit sælden müezet leben.

that you with fortune may live.

knabe, nû rîtet gote ergeben.'

squire, now ride to-God given.'

sîner gâbe was er frô:

of-his gift was he glad:

wider umbe rîten gunde er dô:

back around to-ride began he then:

von freuden was im vil gâch.

for joy was to-him very hasty.

Êrec reit müezeclîchen nâch.

Erec rode leisurely after.

nu ersach in sîn herre

now saw him his lord

unde erkante in verre:

and recognized him far:

wan er was für daz bürgetor

for he was before the town-gate

gegangen: dâ saz er vor.

gone: there sat he before.

vil michel wunder in des nam

very great wonder him of-it took

daz er sô schiere wider kam,

that he so soon back came,

und frâget in mære

and asked him tidings

wes daz ros wære

whose the horse were

daz er dâ fuorte an der hant.

whith he there led at the hand.

vil schiere tet er im erkant

very soon made he to-him known

die rede an ein ende gar.

the matter to an end wholly.

‘herre, nû nemet war

‘lord, now take heed

wâ sî zuo iu rîtent:

where they to you ride:

3600

3605

3610

3615

nu enweiz ich wes ir bîtent

now know-not I why you wait

daz ir nû niht zer strâze gât:

that you now not to-the road go:

ir missetuot ouch, ob irz lât.

you do-wrong also, if you-it leave.

3620 jâ mugt ir an der frouwen

indeed may you in the lady

daz schœnste wîp schouwen

the fairest woman behold

die wir ie gesâhen.'

whom we ever saw.'

(lacuna)

ze dem wege er dô hin gie,

to the way he then thither went,

3625 mit schœnem gruoze er in enphie.

with fair greeting he them received.

als er sî zuo rîten sach,

when he them toward ride saw,

er gienc gegen in unde sprach

he went toward them and spoke

'willekomen, frouwe und herre,'

'welcome, lady and lord,'

unde bat sî vil verre

and asked them very greatly

3630 daz si in dâ mite êrten

that they him there with honored

und ûf sîn hûs kêrten

and to his house turned

und daz sî wolden dâ bestân.

and that they would there stay.

'herre, des sult ir uns erlân'

'lord, of-that shall you us spare'

sprach der ritter Êrec:

said the knight Erec:

‘uns hât der lange wec

‘us has the long way

3635

getân unhozebære:

made uncourtly:

von müede sîn wir swære.

from weariness are we heavy.

iuwern gnâden sî genigen

to-your grace be bowed

und des mit hulde verzigen.

and of-that with favor declined.

ir sult uns ze disen zîten

you shall us at these times

3640

ze gemache lâzen rîten.’

to comfort let ride.’

urloubes gunden sî dô gern,

leave began they then to-ask,

unz er sî muoste gewern.

until he them must grant.

The Count's Suit

XX

Erec takes the best lodging in town, bathes, and eats apart from Enite. The count falls in love with her and plots treachery, and the narrator reflects that love can make even an honest man faithless. The count visits with four knights, sits beside Enite, pities her hardships, and offers to make her countess of his land. She refuses, saying that she owes her husband obedience and would rather be burned alive.

ein knaben er sich dô wîsen bat

a squire he himself then to-guide asked

3645 ze dem tiursten wirte in die stat.

to the worthiest host in the town.

dâ entwâfent er sich dô.

there disarmed he himself then.

frouwe Ênîte was vil frô

lady Enite was very glad

der rouwe der sî dô bekam

of-the rest which to-her then came

dô man ir diu ros benam.

when one from-her the horses took.

3650 ir was als der sêle

to-her was as to-the soul

der von Michâêle

which by Michael

wirt der hellewîze rât

becomes of-the hell-torment rid

diu lange dâ gebûwen hât.

which long there dwelt has.

ein bat hiez er bereiten:

a bath bade he prepare:

wan er von arbeiten

for he from hardships

3655

und vome gewæfen ûf der vart

and from-the armor on the journey

sweizic unde râmic wart:

sweaty and grimy became:

des belôste er den lîp.

of-that relieved he the body.

als er gebâte und sîn wîp,

when he batbed and his woman,

daz ezzen was bereite.

the food was ready.

3660

als man in daz seite,

when one to-them that said,

den tisch er dô rihten hiez.

the table he then set bade.

die frowen Ênîten er niht liez

the lady Enite he not let

mit samt im ezzen,

together with him eat,

wan er was gesezzen

for he was seated

3665

besunder hie und sî dort

apart here and she there

von im an der tweheln ort.

from him at the cloth's end.

nû begunde den grâven riuwen,

now began the count to-rue,

und dâhte, wider sînen triuwen,

and thought, against his faithfulness,

daz er die frouwen erliez,

that he the lady let-off,

3670

daz er im sî niht nemen hiez.

that he from-him her not take bade.

manecvalt wart sîn gedanc,

manifold became his thought,

als in der frouwen schoene twanc,

as him the lady's beauty compelled,

wie er sî möhte gewinnen.

how he her might win.

3675 untriuwe riet sînen sinnen

fäitblessness counseled his senses

daz er dar sô kæme

that he thither so should-come

daz ers im benæme.

that he-her from-him should-take.

daz was doch wider dem rehte

that was yet against the right

daz er dem guoten knehte

that he from-the good warrior

3680 sîn wîp wolde hân genomen

his woman would have taken

dô er in sîn lant was komen

when he into his land was come

dâ ern befriden solde

where he-him protect should

ob im iemen schaden wolde.

if to-him anyone harm would.

der muot was im von minne komen.

the purpose was to-him from love come.

3685 wande wir haben vernomen

for we have heard

von dem grâven mære

of the count tidings

daz er benamen wære

that he assuredly were

beide biderbe unde guot,

both valiant and good,

an sînen triuwen wol behuot,
in his faithfulness well guarded,

unz an die selben stunt.
until at the same hour.

dô tet im untriuwe kunt
then made to-him faithlessness known

diu kreftige minne
the mighty love

und benam im rehte sinne.
and took from-him right senses.

wan an der minne stricke
for in the love's snare

vâhet man vil dicke
catches one very often

einen alsô kargen man
a so crafty man

den niemen sus gewinnen kan.
whom no-one otherwise win can.

vil manegen man diu werlt hât
very many-a man the world has

der nimer in keine missetât
who never into any misdeed

sînen fuoz verstieze
his foot would-thrust

ob ins diu minne erlieze:
if him-of-it the love released:

und gæbe se niht sô rîchen muot,
and should-give she not so rich spirit,

sô wære der werlt niht sô guot
so were to-the world nothing so good

noch sô rehte wæge,
nor so right worthy,

sô ob man ir verphlæge.
as if one her renounced.

3690

3695

3700

3705

nû hât ab niemen solhe kraft,
now has however no-one such strength,

und ergrîfet in ir meisterschaft,
and (if)-seizes him her mastery,

ern müeze ir entwîchen.
unless-be must from-her withdraw.

swer aber ir gwislichen
whoever however her surely

3710 ze rehte kunde gephegen,
to right could tend,

den lieze sî niht under wegen,
him let she not by-the way,

im wær der lôn von ir bereit
to-him were the reward from her ready

daz in sîn arbeit
that him his toil

niht dorfte riuwen,
not needed rue,

3715 huote er sîner triuwen
should-guard he his faithfulness

baz danne der grâve tæte.
better than the count did.

der was dar an niht stæte:
he was there in not steadfast:

wand in frou Minne betwanc
for him lady Love compelled

ûf einen valschen gedanc,
to a false thought,

3720 daz er dem vil biderben man
that he from-the very valiant man

sîn wîp ze nemenne muot gewan.
his woman to take purpose got.

vier ritter er zuo im nam.

four knights he to him took.

als er zen herbergen kam,

when he to-the lodging came,

ob dem tische er sî vant.

at the table he them found.

von im leite er sîn gewant:

from himself laid he his garment:

3725

mit gruoze begunde er für sî stân.

with greeting began he before them to-stand.

dô hete Êrec keinen wân

then had Erec no expectation

daz er im schaden solde,

that he to-him harm should,

als er doch gerne wolde.

as he yet gladly would.

den grâven nam grôz wunder

the count took great wonder

3730

daz sî sô besunder

that they so apart

an dem tische sâzen

at the table sat

und niht ensament âzen.

and not together ate.

er sprach in sîner valscheit

he said in his falseness

‘herre, wære ez iu niht leit,

‘lord, were it to-you not grievous,

3735

sô soldet ir mich wizzen lân

so should you me know let

war umbe ditz sî getân.

what for this be done.

ist disiu frouwe iuwer wîp?

is this lady your woman?

der ist wünneclich ir lîp
to-her is delightful her body

3740 und sô wol genæme
and so well pleasing

daz sî baz bî iu zæme
that she better by you would-befit

danne dort an jener stat.
than yonder at that place.

wes habt ir sî von iu gesat?’
why have you her from you set?’

sus antwurt im Êrec dô,
thus answered him Erec then,

3745 ‘herre, mîn gmüete stêt alsô.’
‘lord, my spirit stands so.’

der grâve bat in fürbaz
the count asked him further

daz erz lieze âne haz
that he-it allowed without hatred

ob er zuo ir sæze
if he by her sat

die wîle daz man æze.
the while that one ate.

3750 des antwurt im Êrec dô
to-that answered him Erec then

‘geruocht irs, herre, ich bin es frô.’
‘(if)-deign you-of-it, lord, I am of-it glad.’

er sprach als er zuo ir gesaz
he said when he by her sat

‘ich sage iu, frouwe, umbe waz
I tell you, lady, about what

ich her zuo iu komen bin:
I hither to you come am:

ein teil durch iuwern gewin

a part for your gain

3755

und benamen durch iuwer êre.

and assuredly for your honor.

mir erbarmde nie sô sêre

me pitied never so sorely

weder man noch wîp

either man or woman

als iuwer wætlicher lîp.

as your comely person.

sît ich iuch hiute lîden sach

since I you today suffer saw

3760

als missezæmen ungemach

so ill-befitting discomfort

der einer frouwen nie gezam,

which to-a lady never befitted,

vil nâ ez mînem herzen kam

very near it to-my heart came

und ouch noch dicke leider tuot.

and also still often more-grievously does.

iuwer grôze armuot

your great poverty

3765

die verwîze ich iu durch übel niht,

that reproach I you for ill not,

wan daz mir leide dran geschiht.

but that to-me sorrow thereat happens.

nû zæmet ir wærlîche

now would-befit you truly

ze frouwen wol dem rîche.

as lady well the kingdom.

3770 wer gap iuch armen solhem man
who gave you poor-one to-such man

der enmac noch enkan
who may-not nor can

iuch gêren ze rehte?
you honor to right?

er hât iuch zeinem knechte.
he has you as-a servant.

der selbe iwer geselle
the same your comrade

3775 (daz in got velle!),
(that him God fell!),

der vlîzet sich dar zuo
he strives himself there for

waz er iu leides getuo.
what he to-you of-sorrow may-do.

und hete mich iuwer got gewert,
and had me of-you God granted,

ir wæret bezzer êren wert.
you were of-better honors worthy.

3780 welt ir, noch geschiht iu guot.
(if)-will you, still happens to-you good.

ich sage iu, frouwe, mînen muot:
I tell you, lady, my purpose:

und ist daz ir sô wîse sât,
and (if)-is that you so wise are,

sô lât irz âne widerstrît:
so let you-it without resistance:

ich wil iu kumbers schaffen rât.
I will for-you of-affliction make remedy.

3785 ich sage iu wie mîn dinc stât.
I tell you how my affair stands.

ich bin diss landes herre:
I am this land's lord:

nâhen noch verre

near nor far

vant ich noch daz wîp

found I yet the woman

* * *

(lacuna)

diu mir gezæme

who me would-befit

daz ich sî næme.

that I her should-take.

nu gevallet ir mir sô wol

now please you me so well

daz ich iuch gerne machen sol

that I you gladly make shall

ze frouwen disem lande:

to lady of-this land:

sô habt ir âne schande

so have you without disgrace

wol verwehset iuwer leben.'

well exchanged your life.'

'ein frouwen müeze iu got geben'

'a lady may you God give'

sprach daz tugenthafte wîp

said the virtuous woman

'diu iuwer lant und iuwer lîp

'who your land and your body

baz ze rehte ziere.

better to right adorns.

ez müeste schiere

it must soon

iuch von rehte geriwen

you by right rue

und wære wider mînen triuwen.

and were against my faithfulness.

3790

3795

3800

als ez diu werlt vernæme

when it the world should-bear

3805 und ez ir für kæme,

and it to-it before should-come,

sô wære ez niuwan ir spot.

so were it only its mockery.

durch daz sô lât die rede durch got,

for that so let the speech for God,

wan iu von rehte baz geschiht:

for to-you by right better happens:

ichn touc ze grævinne niht:

I suit as countess not:

3810 ich hân geburt noch daz guot.

I have birth nor the goods.

swaz ouch mir mîn geselle tuot,

whatever also to-me my comrade does,

daz dulde ich mit rehte.

that endure I with right.

ze wîbe und ze knehte

as woman and as servant

und ze swiu er mich wil hân,

and to whatever be me will have,

3815 des bin ich im alles undertân.

of-that am I to-him all subject.

herre, waz mac ich sprechen mê?

lord, what can I speak more?

wan, ich wolde erweln ê

for, I would choose sooner

daz ich lebende hie zehant

that I living here at-once

ze pulver wurde verbrant

to powder should-be burned

3820 und man den zesæte,

and one that should-scatter,

ê ich ez imer getæte.
before I it ever did.

unser ahte stât gelîch:
our condition stands alike:

wir sîn beide niht rîch,
we are both not rich,

wir kumen wol ze mâze.
we come well to measure.

got mir in leben lâze.'
God to-me him living leave.'

3825

Enite's Ruse

XXI

When the count threatens to take her by force, Enite pretends to agree, claiming that Erec carried her off as a child. She makes the count swear an oath and advises him to come for her in the morning while Erec sleeps, promising to steal his sword. Erec has her sleep in a separate bed. Enite lies awake, torn between his command and his danger, then decides to save him even at the cost of her life, and she kneels at his bed and tells him everything.

als er dise antwurt genam
when he this answer took

und ir willen vernam,
and her will heard,

er sprach 'ich sage iu mînen muot:
he said 'I tell you my purpose:

dar nâch beweget iuch waz ir tuot.
there after consider yourself what you do.

welt ir niht gûetlîchen
(if)-will you not kindly

mîner bete entwîchen,
my request yield,

3830

so geschiht ez under iuvern danc.

so happens it against your will.

iwer wer ist mir hie ze kranc.

your defense is to-me here too weak.

iuwer geselle

your comrade

3835 var swar er welle:

fare wherever he will:

ir müezet hie mit mir bestân.

you must here with me stay.

diu rede sol ein ende hân.'

the speech shall an end have.'

als sî sînen ernst ersach

when she his earnest saw

und daz er ez von herzen sprach,

and that he it from heart spoke,

3840 vil gütlichen sachs in an,

very kindly looked-she him at,

den vil ungetriuwen man,

the very faithless man,

und lachte durch schœnen list.

and laughed for fair cunning.

sî sprach 'ich wæne iu ernest ist.

she said 'I think to-you earnest is.

herre, zürnet ir niht:

lord, be-angry you not:

3845 wan iu der rede unnôt geschiht.

for to-you of-the speech no-need happens.

ez was zwære mîn wân,

it was truly my expectation,

ir hetent die rede durch schimpf getân.

you had the speech for jest done.

wan ez ist iuwer manne site

for it is you men's custom

daz ir uns armiu wîp dâ mite

that you us poor women there with

vil gerne triegent

very gladly deceive

3850

(ichn tar niht sprechen, liegent)

(I dare not say, lie)

daz ir uns vil ze guote

that you us very much good

geheizent wider iuwer muote:

promise against your spirit:

dâ von ich dicke hân gesehen

there from I often have seen

wîben michel leit geschehen.

to-women great sorrow happen.

3855

hæte ich niht ervorht daz,

had I not feared that,

ich hæte iu gantwurtet baz:

I would-have to-you answered better:

wande ich, herre, niene bin

for I, lord, not-at-all am

iedoch sô gar âne sin,

nevertheless so wholly without sense,

und möht ich mîne sache

and could I my affair

3860

zu êren und ze gemache

to honor and to comfort

verwandeln, daz entæte ich.

change, that would-do I.

wan mîn leben ist kumberlich,

for my life is troublesome,

als ir ez selbe habt gesehen.

as you it yourself have seen.

- 3865 vil rehte wil ich iu bejehen
very rightly will I to-you confess
 wie mich von êrste mîn man
how me at first my man
 im ze wîbe gewan.
for-himself to woman got.
 ich bin im niht genôzsam:
I am to-him not equal-in-rank:
 mînem vater er mich nam:
from-my father he me took:
- 3870 wan der ist wêrlîche
for he is truly
 edel unde rîche.
noble and rich.
 in des hof er dicke reit.
into whose court he often rode.
 nâch kinde gewonheit
after child's custom
 lief ich dâ hin unt her.
ran I there thither and hitber.
- 3875 eines tages spilt er
one day played he
 mit uns. dô schein wol daz kint
with us. then showed well that children
 lîhte ze triegenne sint.
easily to deceive are.
 mit liste er mich fûrz tor gewan:
with cunning he me before-the gate got:
 dâ zuhter mich und fuort mich dan
there snatched-he me and led me thence
- 3880 und hât mich alsô immer sît.
and has me so ever since.

manege kumberliche zît
many-a troublesome time

tuot er mich liden:
makes he me suffer:

wan hie von muoz er mîden
for here from must he avoid

daz wesen in sînem lande.
the being in his land.

schaden unde schande
harm and disgrace

3885

ich armiu zallen zîten wone.
I poor-one at-all times dwell-with.

swer bezzer mich dâ vone
whoever better me there from

nâch êren læsen wolde,
according-to honor release would,

gerne ichs volgen solde:
gladly I-of-it consent should:

dar zuo vergulte ez im got.
there to would-repay it him God.

3890

ich wânt diu rede wær iuwer spot.
I thought the speech were your mockery.

ist daz ir mir erscheinent
(if)-is that you to-me show

ob ir die rede meinent
whether you the speech mean

mit etelicher sicherheit,
with some surety,

sô bin ich iuwer bete bereit.
so am I your request ready.'

3895

der rede was der grâve frô.
of-the speech was the count glad.

lachent antwurt er ir sô,
laughing answered he her thus,

'ir muget iuch mit nihte erwern:

'you may yourself with nothing defend:

wande ich wil iu stæte swern.'

for I will to-you constancy swear.'

3900 sîne vinger wurden ûf geleit:

his fingers were up laid:

diu frouwe gap im den eit:

the lady gave him the oath:

ouch gap sî im dâ zestat,

also gave she him there on-the-spot,

ze leisten des er gebat,

to perform what he asked,

ein ungewiszez phant,

an uncertain pledge,

3905 ir triuwe, an sîne hant.

her faith, into his hand.

als dô diu sicherheit geschach,

when then the surety happened,

mit listen frouwe Ênîte sprach

with cunning lady Enite spoke

'herre, nû râte ich iu wol,

'lord, now counsel I you well,

als ein friunt dem andern sol,

as a friend to-the other shall,

3910 wande ich nû deheinem man

for I now to-no man

guotes alsô wol gan,

good so well grant,

ir volget mîner lêre

you follow my teaching

(ez enkumbert iuch niht sêre),

(it troubles you not sorely),

sît ir mich nemen welt,

since you me take will,

dâ mite râte ich daz ir twelt

there with counsel I that you tarry

3915

unze fruo morgen:

until early tomorrow:

sô mugt ir âne sorgen

so may you without cares

mich nemen unde âne strît.

me take and without dispute.

so er an sînem bette lît,

when he on his bed lies,

sô kumet ir her:

so come you hither:

3920

wande sô enmakh er

for so can he

iu niht geschaden, sô werdent ir

you not harm, so become you

iuwers willen an mir

of-your will in me

unbekumbert gewert:

untroubled granted:

wan hînaht stil ich im daz swert.'

for tonight steal I from-him the sword.'

3925

sî sprach 'ich bin iu nû holt:

she said 'I am to-you now devoted:

wan daz habt ir wol versolt,

for that have you well earned,

und müet mich, sult ir dulden

and troubles me, (if)-shall you suffer

schaden von mînen schulden:

harm through my fault:

daz doch benamen muoz ergân,

which yet assuredly must happen,

3930

irn tuot als ich gesprochen hân.

unless-you do as I spoken have.

wan nemet ir mich zehant,
for (if)-take you me at-once,

ez ist umb uns sô gewant
it is about us so disposed

daz er mich ungerne lât:
that he me unwillingly leaves:

3935 sîn swert er bî im hât:
his sword he by him has:

ich weiz wol daz er schaden tuot.’
I know well that he harm does.’

‘iuwer rât der ist guot,
‘your counsel it is good,

der gevellet mir sô wol
it pleases me so well

daz ich iu gerne volgen sol.’
that I you gladly follow shall.’

3940 mit schœnen wîbes listen
with fair woman’s cunning

begunde sî dô fristen
began she then to-save

ir êre unde ir mannes lîp.
her honor and her husband’s life.

sî was ein getriuwez wîp.
she was a faithful woman.

sus überrette sî den man
thus talked-over she the man

3945 daz er mit urloube schiet von dan,
that he with leave parted from thence,

ûf solhe ungewisheit,
upon such uncertainty,

als ich iu dâ hân geseit.
as I to-you there have said.

als sî dô gezzen hâten,
when they then eaten had,

in eine kemenâten
in a chamber

hiez er in betten beiden
bade he for-them bed both

und doch diu bette scheiden:
and yet the beds part:

ern wolt sî bi im niht ligen lân.
he would her by him not lie let.

slâfen gunden sî dô gân.
to-sleep began they then to-go.

nû lâgen sî besunder.
now lay they apart.

ditz was iedoeh ein wunder
this was however a wonder

daz er durch deheinen zorn
that he for any anger

im den muot het erkorn
for-himself the purpose had chosen

daz er ein sô schœne wîp meit.
that he a so fair woman shunned.

von sorgen grôzen kumber leit
from cares great affliction suffered

der frouwen gemüete,
the lady's spirit,

durch triuwe und durch güete,
for faithfulness and for goodness,

wie im diu rede wurde kunt:
how to-him the speech should-become known:

wan er verbôt daz ir munt
for he forbade that her mouth

ze sprechen iht ûf kâme,
to speak at-all up should-come,

3950

3955

3960

- 3965 swaz sî vernæme,
whatever she should-bear,
 als ich iu ê gesaget hân.
as I to-you before said have.
 doch hâte sî ez niht verlân:
yet had she it not refrained:
 dâ mite hâte si in verlorn,
there with had she him lost,
 sô daz er ir durch den zorn
so that he her for the anger
- 3970 ze geselleschaft niht enphlac,
in companionship not kept,
 wan er sunder az unde lac.
for he apart ate and lay.
 nû gedâht diu guote
now thought the good-one
 alsô in ir muote,
thus in her spirit,
 ‘ez ist mir ûf daz zil komen
‘it is to-me upon the goal come
- 3975 daz mir benamen wirt benomen
that from-me assuredly becomes taken
 der aller liebste man
the of-all dearest man
 den ie wîp mêre gewan,
whom ever woman more got,
 ez ensî daz ich in warne.
it unless-be that I him warn.
 ouch weiz ich daz ich ez erarne,
also know I that I it pay-for,
- 3980 zerbriche ich aber sîn gebot.
(if)-break I again his command.
 nû rât mir, herre rîcher got!
now counsel me, lord mighty God!

des enwart mir nie sô nôt.

of-that became to-me never so need.

ich weiz wol, ez ist mîn tât:

I know well, it is my death:

wan er hât mirz nû zwir vertragen.

for he has me-it now twice tolerated.

waz aber von diu, wird ich erslagen?

what however of that, (if)-become I slain?

3985

unde nimt er mir den lîp,

and (if)-takes he from-me the life,

dannoch lebet manec frum wîp.

still lives many-a worthy woman.

ich bin ouch niht sô klagelîch:

I am also not so lamentable:

sô ist er edel unde rîch,

so is he noble and rich,

mîn lieber herre.

my dear lord.

3990

ê im iht gewerre

before him at-all harm

sô wil ich kiesen den tât.'

so will I choose the death.'

ir triuwe ir daz gebôt

her faithfulness her that commanded

daz sî ze sînem bette gie

that she to his bed went

und bôt sich für in an ir knie

and offered herself before him on her knee

3995

und sagete im die rede gar.

and told him the matter wholly.

von vorhten wart sî missevar.

from fear became she discolored.

The Escape, and the Count's Pursuit

XXII

Erec rides away in the night, paying his host with the seven horses. The count wakes, breaks into the lodging with nineteen men, and curses his sleep to find his guests gone. Erec threatens Enite for warning him, yet she warns him again. The count calls Erec a thief. Erec unhorses him, breaking his arm, and kills six of his men. Safe, he rebukes her once more, and she promises never to do it again.

als ez im dô wart erkant,

when it to-him then became known,

ûf stuont er zehant

up stood he at-once

4000 und bat den wirt wachen.

and bade the host wake.

do begunde er sich ûf machen:

then began he himself up to-make:

des wirtes knechten er seite

to-the host's servants he said

daz man im diu ros bereite.

that one for-him the horses prepare.

daz was schiere getân.

that was soon done.

4005 den wirt bat er zuo im gân.

the host bade he to him go.

er sprach als er zuo im gie

he said when he to him went

‘in iuerm hûs habt ir uns hie

‘in your house have you us here

gehandelt schône unde wol:

treated fairly and well:

des geltes bin ich iuwer schol.

of-the repayment am I your debtor.

nû vernemt waz irs erholt.

now hear what you-of-it get.

ich hân hie silber noch golt

I have here silver nor gold

dâ ich iu vergelte mite.

there I you repay with.

nû tuot als ich iuch bite:

now do as I you ask:

diu siben ros nemet ir

the seven horses take you

nû ze gelte von mir.'

now as payment from me.'

der wirt neig im an den fuoz.

the host bowed to-him at the foot.

als ein man gewinnen muoz,

as a man gain must,

sô wirt er herzenlîche frô.

so becomes he heartily glad.

ze hant truog er im dô

at once bore he to-him then

ze heiles gewinne

for weal's gain

sant Gêrtrûte minne.

saint Gertrude's love.

alsô reit er snahtes dan,

so rode he by-night thence,

Êrec der ellende man,

Erec the exiled man,

unde rûnte ze hant

and cleared at once

mit sînem wîbe daz lant.

with his woman the land.

4010

4015

4020

4025

diu het den grâven betrogen

she had the count deceived

und âne sünde gelogen.

and without sin lied.

ê daz sich Êrec

before that himself Erec

ûf machte ûf den wec,

up made on the way,

4030 dô gedâhte dar an

then thought there on

der vil ungetriuwe man,

the very faithless man,

wenn er zer frouwen solde komen,

when he to-the lady should come,

ob er sî wolde hân genomen.

if he her would have taken.

von dem slâfe er ûf erschrac

from the sleep he up started

4035 da er an sînem bette lac:

where he on his bed lay:

wan er des vorhte und hâte wân,

for he of-that feared and had expectation,

er solde sich versûmet hân.

he should himself delayed have.

snelle schrei er 'wâfen!

quickly cried he 'to-arms!

wir haben uns verslâfen.

we have ourselves overslept.

4040 wol ûf, mîne gesellen,

well up, my comrades,

die mir helfen wellen!

who me help will!'

niunzehn wâr ir über al
nineteen were of-them over all

und er der zweinzege an der zal.
and he the twentieth in the number.

als er die zuo im genam
when he them to him took

und zuo den herbergen kam,
and to the lodging came,

nâch ungefüegem gruoze
after rude greeting

sô stiez er mit dem fuoze
so thrust he with the foot

die türe daz sî zerbrach.
the door that it broke.

daz was dem wirte ungemach,
that was to-the host troublesome,

und wolde wâfen hân geschrirn.
and would to-arms have cried.

‘nû sihstû wol daz wirz birn’
‘now seest-thou well that we-it are’

sprach der ungetriuwe man:
said the faithless man:

‘fürht dir niht und sage an,
‘fear thee not and say on,

waz bediutent disiû licht hie?’
what signify these lights here?’

ditz wâren diu diu dâ lie
these were those which there left

der tugenthafte Êrec
the virtuous Erec

do er sich machet ûf den wec.
when he himself made on the way.

4045

4050

4055

der grāve es niht enweste.

the count of-it not knew.

‘wâ slāfent dīne geste?’

‘where sleep thy guests?’

4060 ‘herre, sî sint geriten.’

‘lord, they are ridden.’

mit zornigen siten

with angry manner

sprach der grāve ‘sî ensint.’

said the count ‘they are-not.’

‘lüge ich, herre, ich wære ein kint.’

‘should-lie I, lord, I were a child.’

‘ez ist entriuwen dīn spot.’

‘it is truly thy mockery.’

4065 ‘nein ez, sô helfe mir got.’

‘no it, so help me God.’

‘ez ist. nû wīse mich dar.’

‘it is. now show me there.’

‘nû heizt ez selbe ersuochen gar.’

‘now bid it yourself search wholly.’

‘entriuwen, daz ich daz sol.’

‘truly, that I that shall.’

nû gan ouch ich es iu wol.’

now grant also I of-it to-you well.’

4070 ‘wie lange sol ich dich frāgen?’

‘how long shall I thee ask?’

‘nû seht selbe wâ sî lāgen.

‘now see yourself where they lay.

war umbe solt ichs iu versagen?’

what for should I-it to-you deny?’

er sprach, und wolt in hân erslagen,

he said, and would him have slain,

‘dû wæn ein abeleitære bist.’

‘thou I-think a misleader art.’

‘sî sint geriten, wizze Krist.’

‘they are ridden, knows Christ.’

4075

‘daz ist von dînen schulden.’

‘that is from thy fault.’

‘nein ez, bî iuvern hulden.’

‘no it, by your favor.’

‘sô hæten sî des tages erbiten.’

‘so would-have they of-the day waited.’

* * *

(lacuna)

‘sage, sint sî iht verre?’

‘say, are they at-all far?’

4080

‘nein sî entriuwen, herre:

‘no they truly, lord:

sî riten an dirre stunt.’

they rode at this hour.’

‘wâ sint sî hin?’ ‘deist mir unkunt.’

‘where are they gone?’ ‘that-is to-me unknown.’

dô twanc in sîn untriuwe

then compelled him his faithlessness

ze grôzer herzeriuwe.

to great heart-rue.

4085

dem slâfe fluochte er sêre.

the sleep cursed he sorely.

er sprach ‘mir was êre

he said ‘to-me was honor

niht ze teile getân,

not to share done,

daz ich sus verlorn hân

that I thus lost have

daz schoenste wîp durch mînen gmach

the fairest woman through my comfort

4090

die mîn ouge ie gesach,

whom my eye ever saw,

fremde oder kunde.

strange or known.

verfluochet sî diu stunde

cursed be the hour

daz ich hînaht entslief.

that I tonight fell-asleep.

4095 nâch den rossen er dô rief.

for the horses he then called.

er sprach 'swer sîne sache

he said 'whoever his affair

wendet gar ze gemache,

turns wholly to comfort,

als ich hînaht hân getân,

as I tonight have done,

dem sol êre abe gân

to-him shall honor off go

4100 unde schande sîn bereit.

and disgrace be ready.

wer gwan ie frumen ân arbeit?

who got ever profit without toil?

mir ist geschehen vil rehte.

to-me is happened very rightly.

nû kômen ouch die knehte

now came also the servants

mit den rossen geriten.

with the horses ridden.

4105 dô wart niht langer gebiten.

then was not longer waited.

'wol ûf, ir herren' sprach er.

'well up, you lords' said he.

niuwan schilt unde sper
only shield and spear

hâten sî ze wer genomen:
had they for defense taken:

daz was von ir gæhe komen.
that was from their haste come.

do begunde ûf gēn der tac,
then began up to-go the day,

4110

daz sî den huofslac
that they the hoof-tracks

und daz spor wol sâhen.
and the trail well saw.

nâch im wart michel gâhen.
after him was great hastening.

nû was er zuo der wîle
now was he at the time

geriten wol drî mîle.
ridden well three miles.

4115

wan durch vorhte des wîbes
for from fear of-the woman

(lacuna)

was im von dem lande gâch.
was to-him from the land hasty.

er weste wol, man rite im nâch.
he knew well, one would-ride him after.

als im vor gæhede ûf der vart
when to-him from haste on the journey

4120

sô vil ze redenne state wart,
so much to speak opportunity became,

er sprach 'frou Ênîte,
he said 'lady Enite,

ir habt iuch ze strîte

you have yourself to strife

ze vaste wider mich gesat.

too fast against me set.

4125 daz ich dâ lâzen bat

what I there to-leave bade

und ez iu an den lîp verbôt,

and it you on the life forbade,

daz ist mir ein michel nôt

that is to-me a great distress

daz ir des deste mêre tuot.

that you of-it the more do.

nû sage ich iu mînen muot:

now tell I you my purpose:

4130 ich wilz von iu niht lîden;

I will-it from you not suffer;

und welt ir ez niht mîden,

and (if)-will you it not avoid,

ez gêt iu benamen an den lîp.'

it goes to-you assuredly at the life.'

'gnâde, herre' sprach daz wîp:

'mercy, lord' said the woman:

'ir sult mich des geniezen lân,

'you shall me of-it profit let,

4135 und het ich des niht getân,

and had I of-it not done,

sô hætent ir den lîp verlorn:

so would-have you the life lost:

von diu wær ez niht guot verborn.

from that were it not well forborne.

ich sol ez mêre wol bewarn.'

I shall it more well guard.'

- nû hôte sî sî zuo varn
now heard she them toward fare
- mit zornigem muote. 4140
with angry spirit.
- swie niuwelîch diu guote
however newly the good-one
- warnen verlobt hæte,
warning forsworn bad,
- daz gelübde beleip unstæte:
the vow remained unsteadfast:
- wan sî zerbrach ez dâ zehant,
for she broke it there at-once,
- als sî betwanc der Triuwen bant. 4145
as her compelled the Faithfulness's bond.
- dannoch wâr sî verre.
still were they far.
- sî sprach 'lieber herre,
she said 'dear lord,
- dir rîtet michel her nâch.
to-thee rides great host after.
- sî welln dir schaden: in ist sô gâch.'
they want thee harm: to-them is so hasty.'
- nun darf niemen sprechen daz 4150
now needs no-one say that
- 'von wiu kam daz diu frouwe baz
'from what came that the lady better
- beide gehôrte unde sach?'
both heard and saw?'
- ich sage iu von wiu daz geschach.
I tell you from what that happened.
- diu frouwe reit gewæfens bar:
the lady rode of-armor bare:
- dâ was er gewâfent gar, 4155
there was he armed wholly,

als ein guot ritter sol.

as a good knight shall.

des gehôrte er noch gesach sô wol

therefore heard he nor saw so well

ûz der îsenwæte

out-of the iron-clothing

als er blôzer tæte.

as he bare would-do.

4160 des was im warnunge nôt

of-that was to-him warning need

und frumt im dicke für den tât.

and profited him often against the death.

doch ez im solde wesen zorn,

though it to-him should be anger,

er hæte dicke verlorn

he would-have often lost

von unbesihte den lîp,

from lack-of-sight the life,

4165 wan daz in warnte daz wîp.

but that him warned the woman.

nun het si imz vol niht geseit

now had she to-him-it fully not told

ê der grâve zuo reit.

before the count up rode.

und als er in an sach,

and when he him at looked,

vîl unrîterlîch er sprach,

very unknightly he spoke,

4170 mit ungezæmen grimme,

with unseemly grimness,

nâch unfriuntlîcher stimme,

after unfriendly voice,

‘sehet umbe, ir arger diep!

‘look around, you wicked thief!

wem solde daz wesen liep
to-whom should that be dear

daz ir in disen landen
that you in these lands

nâch unser aller schanden
to our all disgrace

4175

füert ein edel süeze wîp?
lead a noble sweet woman?

und wizzet wol daz ir den lîp
and know well that you the life

mir alzane liezet,
to-me forthwith would-leave,

wan daz ir geniezet
but that you profit

daz ir ritter sît genant,
that you knight are named,

4180

ich hieze iuch hâhen hie zehant:
I would-bid you hang here at-once:

ir habt sî under friunde danc.
you have her against friends' will.

jâ was ez ein vil arger wanc
indeed was it a very wicked trick

daz ir nahtes ritent von dan.
that you by-night rode from thence.

dâ mac man wol kiesen an
there may one well see by

4185

daz ir si ir vater habt genomen.
that you her from-her father have taken.

von wiu wærez anders komen?
from what were-it otherwise come?

ez möht an dirre frouwen

it might in this lady

ein tôre wol schouwen

a fool well behold

4190 daz si iu niht ist ze mâze.

that she to-you not is to measure.

welt ir daz ich iu lâze,

(if)-will you that I to-you leave,

arger schalc, den lîp,

wicked scoundrel, the life,

sô lât belîben daz wîp.

so let remain the woman.

ich wil si ir friunden wider geben.

I will her to-her friends back give.

4195 sî sol niht mê sô swache leben.

she shall not more so poorly live.

nû lât se und schabet iuvern wec.'

now leave her and scrape-off your way.'

'ir enthovewîst iuch' sprach Êrec

'you misbehave yourself' said Erec

'an mir vil sêre.

'toward me very sorely.

von wem habt ir die lêre

from whom have you the teaching

4200 daz ir scheltent einen man

that you revile a man

der ie ritters namen gewan?

who ever knight's name got?

ir sît an swachem hove erzogen.

you are at base court reared.

nû schamet iuch. ir habt gelogen.

now be-ashamed yourself. you have lied.

ich bin edeler danne ir sît.'

I am nobler than you are.'

nû huop sich der strît.

now raised itself the fight.

4205

dô wart niht langer gebiten:

then was not longer waited:

mit zorne sî zesamne riten.

with anger they together rode.

dâ von der ungetriuwe man

there from the faithless man

sînes valsches lôn gewan,

his falseness's reward got,

ein stich ze sîner sîten

a thrust in his side

4210

der in ze manegen zîten

which him for many times

sider niht enverswar:

after not ceased-to-ache:

wan er was underm schilde bar:

for he was under-the shield bare:

dar zuo im abe der arm brach.

there to to-him off the arm broke.

do er in von dem rosse stach,

when he him from the horse thrust,

4215

nu begunde er sîne getriuwen

now began he his faithful-ones

vil sêre riuwen.

very sorely to-rue.

die vielen über ir herren,

who fell over their lord,

daz im niht möhte gewerren.

that him nothing might harm.

- 4220 sumelîche wâren dâ
some were there
 die wolden in sâ
who would him straightway
 rechen mit swerten:
avenge with swords:
 unlange die werten.
not-long they lasted.
 sehse er ir ze tôde sluoc:
six he of-them to death struck:
- 4225 den was vehtens genuoc.
to-them was of-fighting enough.
 die andern wâren alle zagen:
the others were all cowards:
 die fluhên âne jagen.
who fled without chasing.
 dô was des strîtes ende.
then was of-the fight end.
 âne missewende
without discredit
- 4230 reit der ritter Êrec
rode the knight Erec
 vil drâte den wec.
very swiftly the way.
 er sprach 'herre got der guote,
he said 'Lord God the good-one,
 habe mich in dîner huote
have me in thy keeping
 und hilf mir âne schande
and help me without disgrace
- 4235 von disem lande.
from this land.
 wirt ez dem lantvolke kunt,
(if)-becomes it to-the country-folk known,

daz ziuht mir allez nâch zestunt.
that draws to-me all after at-once.

* * *

(lacuna)

vergeben was doch der danc:
in-vain was yet the thought:

wande ez nieman vernam
for it no-one heard

4240

ê er vol ûz dem walde kam:
before he fully out-of the forest came:

daz was sîn grôziu sælekeit.
that was his great blessedness.

alsô beleip ez ungeseit:
so remained it unsaid:

die riter die dâ genâren
the knights who there survived

und bî ir herren wâren,
and by their lord were,

4245

dern wolt deheiner von im komen,
of-them would none from him come,

von dem man ez het vernomen:
from whom one it would-have heard:

do getorsten ez die flienden zagen
then dared it the fleeing cowards

vor ir schande niht gesagen
for their shame not say

ê daz Êrec der herre
before that Erec the lord

4250

kæme von dem lande verre.
came from the land far.

die ritter dô verbunden

the knights then bound

dem grâven sîne wunden

to-the count his wounds

und fuorten in ûf bâren

and carried him on biers

4255 und die dâ tôten wâren

and those there dead were

hin heim mit herzeriuwen.

thither home with heart-roe.

sô gnôz er sîn untriuwen.

so profited he from-his faithlessness.

als Êrec dô gereit

when Erec then rode

an sîne gewarheit,

to his safety,

4260 da er den grâven niht entsaz,

where he the count not feared,

nu verweiz er frowen Êniten daz

now reproached he lady Enite that

daz sî sîn gebot sô dicke brach.

that she his command so often broke.

sîn zorn wart grôz und ungemach

his anger became great and troublesome

und unsenfter danne ê.

and harsher than before.

4265 nu gelobte se daz sîz nimmer mê

now promised she that she-it never more

fürdermâle getâte:

further-times would-do:

daz liez sî aber niht stæte.

that kept she however not steadfast.

Guivreiz the Small

XXIII

The road leads into the land of a very short but powerful knight who has never lost a fight. When he rides toward them, Enite warns Erec. The knight greets Erec and challenges him, and Erec, weary and reluctant, is forced to fight. They break spears and fight on foot, Erec receives a bleeding wound in his side, and Enite cries out in fear. At last Erec strikes the knight down, and the knight begs for mercy and offers to become his vassal.

swaz Êrec nôt unz her erleit,
whatever Erec distress until now suffered,

daz was ein ringiu arbeit
that was a light hardship

unde gar ein kindes spil
and wholly a child's play

dâ wider und ich iu sagen wil
there against what I to-you tell will

daz im ze lîden noch geschach.
which to-him to suffer still happened.

beide nôt und ungemach
both distress and discomfort

was im ze teile getân:
was to-him to share done:

des enwart er niht erlân,
of-that was he not spared,

er enlite vil unde genuoc.
he unless-suffered much and enough.

der wec in ze hant truoc
the way him at once carried

in ein unkundez lant.
into an unknown land.

des herre was im unerkant.
whose lord was to-him unknown.

4270

4275

4280 von des selben manheit
of the same-one's manhood

ist uns wunder geseit.
is to-us wonder told.

er was ein vil kurzer man,
he was a very short man,

mir ensî gelogen dar an,
to-me unless-be lied there in,

vil nâ getwerges genôz,
very nearly dwarf's equal,

4285 wan daz im vil grôz
but that to-him very great

wâren arme unde bein.
were arms and legs.

dâ zuo den brüsten er schein
there to in-the breast he appeared

kreftic unde dic genuoc.
strong and thick enough.

dar under er ein herze truoc
there under he a heart bore

4290 volleclîche manhaft.
fully manly.

daz gab im ouch die kraft:
that gave him also the strength:

wan dâ stêt ez allez an;
for there stands it all on;

und wizzet rehte, wære ein man
and know rightly, were a man

gewahsen zwelf klâfter lanc,
grown twelve fathoms long,

4295 und wære sîn herze kranc
and were his heart weak

unde ûf zageheit geborn,
and to cowardice born,

daz michel âs wære verlorn.

that great carcass were lost.

sus was dem herren niht.

thus was to-the lord not.

wir müezen sîner geschiht

we must of-his story

ein michel teil verdagen.

a great part keep-silent.

4300

man möhte vil dâ von gesagen,

one could much there from tell,

wan daz der rede dâ wær ze vil:

but that of-the speech there were too much:

dâ von ich iu sî kürzen wil.

there from I to-you it shorten will.

ez hete der herre guot

it had the lord good

gelücke unde rîchen muot

luck and rich spirit

4305

unde hete unverzaget

and had undaunted

den prîs an manegem man bejaget:

the prize from many-a man won:

dar umbe man noch von im seit

there for one still of him says

daz im an sîner manheit

that to-him in his manhood

unz an den tac nie misselanc.

until at the day never failed.

4310

er wære starc oder kranc

he were strong or weak

der im mit übel zuo kam,

who him with ill up came,

der wênege ie den sige nam.

of-them few ever the victory took.

kein ritterschaft er versaz

no knighthood he neglected

4315 (ouch entet ez niemen baz),

(also did it no-one better),

swaz er ir bî sînen zîten

whatever he of-it in his times

ie mohte errîten.

ever could win-by-riding.

do er den strît niuwen vant,

when he the fight anew found,

dô wart im ir triuwe erkant.

then became to-him her faithfulness known.

4320 als si in gewarnet hâte,

as she him warned had,

nû sâhens alsô drâte

now saw-they so quickly

in dort zuo rîten.

him yonder toward ride.

nû gruofter frowen Ênîten.

now greeted-be lady Enite.

als er Êrecke sô nâhen kam

when he to-Erec so near came

4325 daz er sîniu wort vernam,

that he his words heard,

‘willekomen, herre,

‘welcome, lord,

ir nâhen oder verre

you near or far

in disiu lant geriten sît,

into these lands ridden are,

mich bedunket âne strît,

me seems without dispute,

4330 ir muget wol ein degen sîn.

you may well a thane be.

daz ist an zwein dingen schîn:

that is in two things evident:

ir fûeret, sam mir mîn lîp,

you lead, as to-me my life,

daz allerschœeneste wîp

the all-fairest woman

der ich ie kûnde gewan:

of-whom I ever knowledge got:

wer gæbe die eim bæsen man?

who would-give her to-a base man?

darzuo sît ir gewâfent wol,

there-to are you armed well,

als ein ritter sol

as a knight shall

der ze deheinen stunden

who at no hours

werlôs wil werden funden

defenseless will become found

und der âventiure suochet.

and who adventure seeks.

ob sîn got nû ruochet,

if of-it God now deigns,

der vindet ir hie teil.

he finds of-it here share.

und gevellet iu daz heil,

and (if)-falls to-you the weal,

ich wil iu daz zwâre sagen,

I will to-you that truly say,

ir muget hie den prîs bejagen

you may here the prize win

des ir wol gelobet sît.

for-which you well praised are.

nû werent iuch, ritter, ez ist zît.

now defend yourself, knight, it is time.'

4335

4340

4345

sus antwurt im durch sînen spot
thus answered him for his mockery

Êrec 'nû enwelle got,
Erec 'now will-not God,

4350 ritter biderbe unde guot,
knight valiant and good,

daz ir immer getuot
that you ever do

sô vil wider iuvern triuwen.
so much against your faithfulness.

ez müeste iuch her nâch riuwen.
it must you here after rue.

jâ butent ir mir iuvern gruoꝛ:
indeed offered you to-me your greeting:

4355 wenne wurde iu lasters buoꝛ,
when would-become to-you of-reproach amends,

bestüendet ir mich dar nâch?
should-attack you me there after?

sô wære iu ze gâch
so were to-you too hasty

und belibet sîn âne ruon.
and would-remain of-it without renown.

ir sult ez durch got tuon
you shall it for God do

4360 und mich mit gemache lân:
and me in comfort leave:

wande ich habe iu niht getân.
for I have to-you nothing done.

ich hân verre geriten

I have far ridden

und solhe arbeit erliten

and such hardship suffered

daz aller mînes herzen rât

that all my heart's counsel

unwilleclîchen stât.'

unwillingly stands.'

4365

der herre dâht 'er ist verzagt,

the lord thought 'he is disheartened,

sît er sîne arbeit klagt.'

since he his hardship laments.'

er sprach 'ir wert iuch ân nôt

he said 'you defend yourself without need

dâ mite daz ich iu dienest bot.

there with that I to-you service offered.

daz hân ich anders niht getân,

that have I otherwise not done,

4370

wan ûf ritterschefte wân.

but upon knighthood's expectation.

swaz iu nû mê von mir geschiht,

whatever to-you now more from me happens,

dar umbe dürfet ir mir niht

there for need you to-me not

an mîne triuwe sprechen,

on my faith speak,

diech nimmer wil zerbrechen.

whiche-I never will break.

4375

wert iuch durch iuwer schœnez wîp,

defend yourself for your fair woman,

welt ir behalten den lîp.'

(if)-will you keep the life.'

als Êrec dô gesach

when Erec then saw

daz im ze vehten nôt geschach,

that to-him to fight need happened,

4380 sîn ros er wider kêrte,

his horse he back turned,

als in sîn ellen lêrte.

as him his valor taught.

zesamne riten zwêne man

together rode two men

der ietweder nie gewan

of-whom each never got

zageheit dehein teil.

of-cowardice any share.

4385 ez muoste sterke unde heil

it must strength and weal

under in beiden

among them both

an dem sige scheiden.

at the victory decide.

diu sper sî ûf stâchen

the spears they up thrust

daz sî gar zerbrâchen.

that they wholly broke.

4390 diu just wart sô krefteclich

the joust was so mighty

daz diu ros hinder sich

that the horses behind themselves

an die hâhsen gesâzen.

on the haunches sat.

dô muosten sî lâzen

then must they let

die zoume von den handen

the bridles from the hands

und anders inz enblanden.

and otherwise to-them-it entrust.

4395

si erbeizten bêde gelîche

they dismounted both alike

vil unmüezeclîche

very busily

und erfuorten diu swert.

and drew the swords.

ir ietweder wart gewert

of-them each was granted

volleclîchen an der stat

fully on the spot

4400

des er lange got bat,

what he long God asked,

daz er im sante einen man

that he to-him sent a man

dâ er sich versuochte an.

where he himself tested on.

nû begundens vehten

now began-they to-fight

glîch zwein guoten knehten.

like two good warriors.

4405

ditz huop sich umben mitten tac.

this raised itself about-the mid day.

Êrec fil de roi Lac

Erec son of king Lac

vorhte laster und den tôt.

feared reproach and the death.

den schilt er im dar bôt
the shield he to-him there offered

4410 und gunde sich mit listen
and began himself with cunning

âne slege fristen.
without blows to-save.

der gedanc was jenem unerkant,
the thought was to-that-one unknown,

unde sluog im von der hant
and struck to-him from the hand

den schilt unz an den riemen.
the shield until at the strap.

4415 wande sî niemen
for them no-one

ûf der heide dô schiet,
on the heath then parted,

zuo der sîten ern erriet
in the side he-him hit

und sluog im eine wunden.
and struck him a wound.

dô wânde er haben funden
then thought he have found

4420 ein zagen an dem gaste.
a coward in the guest.

ouch zwîvelte vaste
also doubted greatly

diu schœne frouwe Ênîte,
the fair lady Enite,

dô im sîn sîte
when to-him his side

alsô sêre bluote.
so sorely bled.

vil lûte schrei diu guote

very loudly cried the good-one

4425

‘owê, lieber herre mîn,

‘alas, dear lord my,

solde ich ez für iuch sîn!

should I it for you be!

jâ wæne ich iuch verlorn hân.’

indeed think I you lost have.’

‘frouwe, iuch triuget iuwer wân’

‘lady, you deceives your expectation’

sprach der unverzagte man:

said the undaunted man:

4430

‘wan dâ verlür ich mêre an.’

‘for there would-lose I more by.’

vil wol bewârte er ir daz.

very well proved he to-her that.

ein wênic trat er fürbaz:

a little stepped he forward:

niht langer er im vertruoc,

not longer he him tolerated,

ûf den helm er in sluoc

upon the helm he him struck

4435

daz der wênige man

that the little man

dar durch eine wunden gwan

there through a wound got

unde daz er vor im lac.

and that he before him lay.

Êrec fil de roi Lac

Erec son of king Lac

hâte nâch missetân,

had nearly done-wrong,

4440

wan er wolte in erslagen hân.

for he would him slain have.

‘nein’ sprach er, ‘ritter guot,
 ‘no’ said he, ‘knight good,

durch dînen tugenthaften muot
 for thy virtuous spirit

unde durch dîn schœne wîp
 and for thy fair woman

4445 sô lâ mir den lîp
 so leave to-me the life

unde êre got an mir.
 and honor God in me.

vîl gerne sicher ich dir.
 very gladly pledge I to-thee.

nû enphâch mich ze man:
 now receive me as vassal:

und wizzest daz ich nie gewan
 and know that I never got

4450 deheinen herren mêre.
 any lord more.

wan daz dir diu êre
 but that to-thee the honor

geschiht von dîner manheit,
 happens from thy manhood,

ich wære des tôdes ê bereit
 I were of-the death sooner ready

ê ez immer ergienge:
 before it ever happened:

4455 dehein edel dich vervienge.
 any nobility thee availed.

sus ist ez mir unmære:
 thus is it to-me indifferent:

swer dîn vater wære,
 whoever thy father were,

sô edelet dich dîn tugent sô

so ennobles thee thy virtue so

daz ich dîn bin ze herren frô.’

that I of-thee am as lord glad.’

The Two Wounded Men, and the Night with Guivreiz

XXIV

The knight names himself Guivreiz the Small, king of Ireland, but Erec does not accept him as a vassal. The two bind each other's wounds with strips of their surcoats and sit while Enite wipes away their blood. On learning Erec's name, Guivreiz pledges him friendship and invites him to his castle. Erec agrees to stay only one night, is received with honor, and refuses to wait for a physician.

nû het gewert dirre strît

now had lasted this fight

4460

unz an die nônezît,

until at the none-time,

den sumertac alsô lanc.

the summer-day so long.

dô Êrecke alsô gelanc,

when to-Erec so succeeded,

die gnâde er an im begie

the mercy he on him performed

daz er in leben lie.

that he him live let.

4465

ûf zuhter in bî der hant:

up raised-he him by the hand:

den helm er im abe bant.

the helm he from-him off unbound.

er sprach ‘ichn muote mêre

he said ‘I-not ask more

von iu deheiner êre,

from you any honor,

- 4470 wan daz ir mir âne schamen
but that you to-me without shame
 rehte nennet iuvern namen;
rightly name your name;
 ichn muote ze dirre zît
I-not ask at this time
 wan daz ich wizze wer ir sît.
but that I know who you are.'
 'herre, daz sî getân.
'lord, that be done.
- 4475 ich wil iuch wizzen lân,
I will you know let,
 ich bin künec über Îrlant,
I am king over Ireland,
 Guivreiz le pitîz genant.'
Guivreiz le pitiz named.'
 Êrec gevienc sîn niht ze man.
Erec took of-him not as vassal.
 ir ietweder klagen began
of-them each to-lament began
- 4480 des anderen ungemach.
the other's discomfort.
 Êrec eine binden brach
Erec a bandage broke
 ab sînem wâpenrocke sâ.
from his surcoat straightway.
 nû wâ möhter anderswâ
now where might-be elsewhere
 ein friuntlicher binden
a friendlier bandage
- 4485 zuo den zîten vinden?
at the times find?

Guivreiz le pitîz eine alsam

Guivreiz le pitiz one likewise

von sînem wâpenrocke nam.

from his surcoat took.

ein ander sî verbunden

one another they bound

ir ietweder die wunden

of-them each the wound

die er mit sîner hant sluoc.

which he with his hand struck.

ditz was friuntlîch genuoc.

this was friendly enough.

hie was diu frouwe Ênîte mite

here was the lady Enite with

vil gûetlîchen nâch ir site.

very kindly after her custom.

ze handen viengen sî sich dô

by hands took they each-other then

(ir ietweder was des andern frô)

(of-them each was of-the other glad)

und sâzen ensament ûf daz gras:

and sat together on the grass:

wande in ruowe nôt was.

for to-them rest need was.

in het der strît getân vil heiz:

them had the fight made very hot:

beide bluot unde sweiz

both blood and sweat

hâte sî berunnen gar.

had them run-over wholly.

diu frouwe Ênîte gieng ouch dar.

the lady Enite went also there.

diu hete lieb bî leide,

she had joy with sorrow,

4490

4495

4500

als ich iu bescheide.

as I to-you declare.

nû was si ir mannes siges frô:

now was she of-her husband's victory glad:

4505 sîn wunden weindes aber dô.

his wounds wept-she-for however then.

nu erfürbte sî diu guote

now cleansed them the good-one

von sweize und von bluote

of sweat and of blood

mit ir stûchen orte.

with her sleeve's end.

nâch friuntlichem worte

after friendly word

4510 sâzen an der heide

sat on the heath

dise herren beide

these lords both

und kuolten sich durch ir gemach.

and cooled themselves for their comfort.

der künec zuo dem gaste sprach

the king to the guest spoke

‘vernemet ez, herre, für ein spil

‘take it, lord, for a jest

4515 daz ich nû reden wil

what I now speak will

und lât ez iu niht wesen leit.

and let it to-you not be grievous.

mich betwanc iuwer manheit

me compelled your manhood

daz ich wolde werden iuwer man:

that I would become your vassal:

dâ ist iu wol gelungen an.

there is to-you well succeeded in.

nû ist diu frûmekeit an iu schîn
now is the prowess in you evident

4520

daz ichz noch gerner wolde sîn,
that I-it still more-gladly would be,

ob ich wizzen mähete
if I know might

ob irz an dem geslächte
whether you-it in the lineage

alsô wol hætent,
so well had,

und mir daz kunt tætent:
and to-me that known should-make:

4525

sô wære mîner êre
so were of-my honor

sô vil deste mêre.
so much the more.

daz mir von iu geschehen ist,
what to-me from you happened is,

des ich unze an dirre frist
by-which I until at this time

nie wart betwungen,
never was defeated,

4530

noch ist mir wol gelungen
still is to-me well succeeded

und wil ez âne klage lân,
and will it without lament leave,

hât ez ein edel man getân,
(if)-has it a noble man done,

und wil es immer wesen frô.
and will of-it ever be glad.'

Êrec antwurt im alsô
Erec answered him thus

4535

‘mîn burt ich iu nennen sol.
‘my birth I to-you name shall.

ich wæne ez vil wol

I think it very well

von geburt wesen mac.

of birth be may.

mîn vater ist der kûnec Lac,

my father is the king Lac,

4540 Êrec heize ich.'

Erec am-called I.'

dô fröute der kûnec sich.

then gladdened the king himself.

als schiere und er diu mære

as soon as he the tidings

vernam wer er wære,

heard who he were,

sîn sitzen wart vil unlanc:

his sitting became very not-long:

4545 von freuden er ûf spranc

for joy he up sprang

und bôt sich an sînen fuoz.

and offered himself at his foot.

er sprach 'wie gerne ich wesen muoz

he said 'how gladly I be must

iu immer stæte als iuwer man.

to-you ever constant as your vassal.

mit swiu ich iu gedienen kan

with whatever I you serve can

4550 (iwer vater ist mir wol erkant),

(your father is to-me well known),

beide lîp unde lant

both body and land

sol iu wesen undertân.

shall to-you be subject.

ouch sult ir mich geniezen lân
also shall you me profit let

daz ich iu stæte triuwe
that I to-you constant faithfulness

leiste âne riuwe
perform without rue

4555

al die wîle unde ich lebe.
all the while that I live.

und gewert mich einer gebe:
and grant me a gift:

des man ich iuch sô verre:
of-that remind I you so far:

wâ wart ie triuwe merre
where was ever faithfulness greater

dan friunt bî friunde vinden sol,
than friend with friend find shall,

4560

die beide ein ander trûwent wol?
who both one another trust well?

bî der man ich iuch daz ir
by which remind I you that you

durch mîne liebe samt mir
for my love together-with me

ûf mîn hûs rîtent
to my house ride

und dâ sô lange bîtent
and there so long wait

4565

unz daz ir geruowet sît.
until that you rested are.

ditz lât wesen âne strît:
this let be without dispute:

dâ handelt ir mich wol an,
there treat you me well in,

daz ich ez immer dienen kan.'
that I it ever serve can.'

- 4570 Êrec sprach 'ich wil iuch wern:
Erec said 'I will you grant:
 doch sult irs niht lange gern.
yet shall you-of-it not long desire.
 ir müezt ez âne zorn lân:
you must it without anger leave:
 ich mac niht langer hie bestân
I can not longer here stay
 niuwan unz morgen fruô.
only until tomorrow early.
- 4575 und sage iu war umb ich daz tuo.
and tell you what for I that do.
 ich var nâch gemache niht:
I fare after comfort not:
 swaz ouch mir des geschiht,
whatever also to-me of-it happens,
 dar ûf ahte ich niht vil:
there on heed I not much:
 wan ich dar nâch niht werben wil.'
for I there after not strive will.'
- 4580 der künec was des gastes frô.
the king was of-the guest glad.
 zuo den rossen gieng er dô.
to the horses went he then.
 er sprach 'wir sulen rîten.'
he said 'we shall ride.'
 nû half er frowen Êniten
now helped he lady Enite
 daz sî ûf ir phärt gesaz:
that she on her palfrey sat:
- 4585 mit schœnen zûhten tet er daz.
with fair courtesy did he that.
 er fuort sî für an den wec.
he led her forth on the way.

dar nâch reit Êrec.

there after rode Erec.

und als sî für daz hûs riten,

and when they before the house rode,

niht langer daz vermiten

not longer that shunned

sîne junkherren,

his young-lords,

sî liefen gegen ir herren

they ran toward their lord

ûz für daz bûrgetor:

out before the town-gate:

dâ enphiengen sî in vor

there received they him before

mit frœlîchem schalle:

with joyful din:

wan sî wâren alle

for they were all

des vil frô unde gemeit

of-that very glad and gay

daz er nâch gewonheit

that he after custom

den ritter hæte gefangen.

the knight had captured.

er sprach 'ez ist niht ergangen

he said 'it is not gone

als ir wænet daz ez sî,'

as you think that it be,'

unde sagete in dâ bî

and told them there with

vil rehte diu mære

very rightly the tidings

wie ez ergangen wære.

how it gone were.

4590

4595

4600

er sprach 'swem ich nû lieb bin,
he said 'to-whomever I now dear am,

4605 der kêre dar an sînen sin
he turn there on his mind

daz er in enphâhe schône,
that he him receive fairly,

daz ich ius immer lône,
that I to-you-of-it ever reward,

den aller tiuristen man
the of-all worthiest man

des ich ie künde gewan.'
of-whom I ever knowledge got.'

4610 ouch tâten sî daz.
also did they that.

Êrec enwart baz
Erec was better

nie gehandelt anderswâ
never treated elsewhere

danne ouch des nahtes dâ.
than also of-the night there.

als sî des âbents gâzen
when they of-the evening ate

4615 und dar nâch gesâzen,
and there after sat,

der wirt sprach 'herre, ez ist mîn rât
the host said 'lord, it is my counsel

daz ir uns einen arzet lât
that you for-us a physician let

gewinnen ze unsern wunden.
get for our wounds.

ist daz ir ze disen stunden
(if)-is that you at these hours

4620 ungeheilet scheidet hin,
unhealed part away,

daz dunket mich ungewin.

that seems to-me loss.

ir sît leider sêre wunt:

you are alas sorely wounded:

dar zuo ist iu daz lant unkunt

there to is to-you the land unknown

und mag iu vil wol missegân.'

and may to-you very well go-ill.'

Êrec sprach 'lât die rede stân:

Erec said 'let the speech stand:

wan ich belîben niene mac,

for I stay not-at-all can,

niuwan unz an den tac.'

only until at the day.'

4625

Keii, and Gawein's Horse

XXV

After a gap in the manuscript, the narrator describes Keii, Arthur's steward, whose heart was sometimes faithful and sometimes false, sometimes bold and sometimes cowardly. Keii tries to force Erec to come to Arthur. Erec knocks him down with the shaft of his spear and takes his horse, which belongs to Gawein. Keii confesses his name, and Erec lets him return the horse to Gawein. At court Keii tells what happened and names Erec by his voice, and all agree.

nû was im die naht bereit

now was to-him the night ready

von êren elliu werdekeit

of honors all dignity

* * *

(lacuna)

4630 daz er danne wolde sagen

that he then would say

er het im die wunden geslagen

he had to-him the wounds struck

unde er solde gefangen sîn.

and he should captured be.

dar an wart vollecliche schîn

there in became fully evident

daz diu werlt nie gewan

that the world never got

4635 deheinen seltsænern man.

any stranger man.

sîn herze was gevieret;

his heart was quartered;

etewenne gezieret

sometimes adorned

mit vil grôzen triuwen

with very great faithfulness

und daz in begunde riuwen

and that him began to-rue

4640 allez daz er unz her ie

all that he until now ever

ze unrehte begie,

to wrong committed,

alsô daz er valsches was

so that he of-falseness was

lûter sam ein spiegelglas

clear as a mirror-glass

und daz er sich huote

and that he himself guarded

mit werken und mit muote

with deeds and with spirit

4645

daz er immer missetæte.

lest he ever should-do-wrong.

des was er unstæte.

of-that was he inconstant.

wan dar nâch kam im der tac

for there after came to-him the day

daz er deheiner triuwen phlac.

that he no faithfulness kept.

sô wolt in niht genügen

so would him not suffice

4650

swaz er valsches füegen

whatever he of-falseness contrive

mit allem vlîze kunde

with all diligence could

mit werken und mit munde:

with deeds and with mouth:

daz riet elliu sîn ger.

that counseled all his desire.

dar zuo sô was ouch er

there to so was also he

4655

küene an etelîchem tage,

bold on some day,

dar nâch ein werltzage.

there after a world-coward.

ditz wâren zwêne dwerhe site.

these were two crosswise customs.

dâ verswachete er sich mite,
there disgraced he himself with,

4660 daz er den liuten allen
that he to-the people all

muoste missevalen
must displease

und niemen was ze guote erkant.
and to-no-one was for good known.

von sînem valsche er was genant
from his falseness he was named

Keiû der kâtspreche.
Keii the foul-mouth.

4665 nu verstuont sich vil gereche
now understood himself very quickly

Êrec waz er meinde,
Erec what he meant,

als erm ouch bescheinde.
as he-him also showed.

er sprach 'herre,
he said 'lord,

ich hân ze varne verre
I have to fare far

4670 unde mac ze disen zîten
and can at these times

ûz dem wege niht gerîten.
out-of the way not ride.

wær ez an mîner muoze,
were it at my leisure,

nâch des kûneges gruoze
after the king's greeting

füere ich tûsent mîle.
would-fare I thousand miles.

ir sult mich ze dirre wîle
you shall me at this while

4675

mîne strâze lâzen varn.
my road let fare.

got müeze iuch bewarn.'
God may you protect.'

dô sprach der valsche Keiîn
then said the false Keiîn

'herre, lât die rede sîn.
'lord, let the speech be.

ir sult niht alsô scheiden.
you shall not so part.

4680

ez missezæme uns beiden.
it would-ill-befit us both.

ich bringe iuch ze hûse
I bring you to house

dem kûnege Artûse
to-the king Arthur

zwâre oder ich enmac.'
truly or I can-not.'

Êrec fil de roi Lac
Erec son of king Lac

4685

wart ein teil dâ von bewegt.
became a part there from moved.

er sprach 'ich wæne ir enmegt.
he said 'I think you can-not.

dâ von ist iu alsô guot,
there from is to-you so good,

ir habt dar umbe ringen muot:
you have there about light spirit:

wan welt ir mich dar bringen,
for (if)-will you me thither bring,

4690

ir müezet mîchs twingen.
you must me-it compel.

doch sît ir frum, ir bringt mich hin:
yet are you worthy, you bring me thither:

wan ich iu wol ze gwinne bin.'
for I to-you well to win am.'

'ich weiz wol' sprach Keiin
'I know well' said Keiin

4695 'daz ich frum bin.
'that I worthy am.

ê ir mich des überstrîtet
before you me of-it outfight

daz ir sus hinnen rîtet,
that you thus hence ride,

irne gesehet mînen herren,
unless-you see my lord,

wande ez iu niht mac gewerren,
for it you not may harm,

4700 ich twinge iuchs gûetlîchen.
I compel you-it kindly.

dâ von sult ir entwîchen
there from shall you withdraw

und mînen herren gesehen.
and my lord see.

daz muoz benamen geschehen.'
that must assuredly happen.'

daz tet Êrecke alrêrst zorn.
that did to-Erec first anger.

4705 daz ros ruorte er mit den sporn.
the horse stirred he with the spurs.

'ziehet zuo iu die hant!'
'draw to you the hand!'

ûf warf er daz gewant
up threw he the garment

unde erfuorte daz swert.
and drew the sword.

wande ers wol wære wert,
for he-it well were worthy,

sô wolt er dem argen zagen
so would he to-the wicked coward

die hant hân abe geslagen.
the hand have off struck.

dô zuhte er sî enzît
then drew he it in-time

unde flôch âne strît.
and fled without fight.

doch er ûf Gringuljeten
though he upon Gringuljete

ze dem besten rosse wære geweten
to the best horse were yoked

daz ie ritter gewan,
which ever knight got,

alsô snelle kêrte er dan
so swiftly turned he thence

rehte an die widervart:
right on the way-back:

von Êrecke im gevolget wart.
by Erec to-him followed was.

und als er rehte daz gesach,
and when he rightly that saw,

als ez im ze heile geschach,
as it to-him to weal happened,

daz er gewæfens was blôz,
that he of-armor was bare,

wie wol er Keiû genôz
how well he Keiû profited

der tugent die Êrec hâte.
from-the virtue which Erec had.

4710

4715

4720

- 4725 vil wunderlîche drâte
very wondrously quickly
 daz sper er umbe kêrte
the spear he around turned
 daz er in niht versêrte;
that he him not wounded;
 er wante gein im den schaft
he turned toward him the shaft
 und stach in mit solher kraft
and thrust him with such strength
- 4730 daz Keiîn rehte als ein sac
that Keiîn right as a sack
 under dem rosse lac,
under the horse lay,
 nâch sînem rehte,
according-to his right,
 unglîch eim guoten knehte.
unlike a good warrior.
 daz ros fuorte Êrec dan.
the horse led Erec away.
- 4735 Keiîn, der schalkhafte man,
Keiîn, the knavish man,
 ime vaste nâch lief:
him hard after ran:
 lûte er in an rief,
loudly he him at called,
 ‘nein, ritter vil guot!
‘no, knight very good!
 durch dînen tugenthaften muot,
for thy virtuous spirit,
- 4740 daz mir daz ros hie bestê!
that to-me the horse here remain!

oder ich muoz immer mê

or I must ever more

verswachtet unde gehœnet sîn.

disgraced and mocked be.

jan ist ez weizgot niht mîn.'

indeed is it God-knows not mine.'

dô kêrte der guote

then turned the good-one

mit lachendem muote

with laughing spirit

und vernam sîne klage.

and heard his lament.

er sprach 'ritter, nû sage,

he said 'knight, now say,

wie bistû genant?

how art-thou named?

unde tuo mir erkant

and make to-me known

disse rosses herren.

this horse's lord.

ez mac dir niht gewerren.

it may thee not harm.

ich wil wizzen dînen namen.

I will know thy name.

dû darft dich niht sô sêre schamen.

thou needst thyself not so sorely be-ashamed.

ez ist geschehen manegem man

it is happened to-many-a man

der doch nie zagen muot gewan.'

who yet never coward's spirit got.'

Keiîn sprach 'nein, herre.

Keiîn said 'no, lord.

ich bit iuch vil verre:

I beg you very greatly:

4745

4750

4755

ist daz ir mir genâde tuot,
(if)-is that you to-me mercy do,

sô sît mir vollecliche guot,
so be to-me fully good,

4760 alsô daz ir mich des erlât
so that you me of-that spare

des ir mich gefrâget hât,
of-which you me asked have,

daz ich mich iu nande.
that I myself to-you should-name.

mich hât ûf solhe schande
me has to such disgrace

hie brâht mîn zageheit
here brought my cowardice

4765 daz doch mir ein herzeleit
that yet to-me a heart-sorrow

von den dingen muoz geschehen,
from the things must happen,

sol ich iu mînes namen jehen:
(if)-shall I to-you my name confess:

wan ich hân wol garnet iuvern spot.
for I have well earned your mockery.

nû enbert sîn durch got.
now forgo it for God.'

4770 Êrec sprach 'ritter, saget an:
Erec said 'knight, say on:

jâ enist hie nieman
indeed is here no-one

wan ir und diu hûsfrouwe mîn:
but you and the housewife my:

esn mac dehein rât sîn,
it may no remedy be,

oder ir habt daz ros verlorn.'
or you have the horse lost.'

daz sîne mante er mit den sporn,
his own urged he with the spurs,

4775

als er dan wolde rîten.
as he away would ride.

Keiîn bat in bîten.
Keiîn bade him wait.

er sprach 'ich wil ez gote klagen
he said 'I will it to-God lament

daz ich mîn laster muoz sagen.
that I my reproach must say.

nû sage ich iu wer ich bin.
now tell I you who I am.

4780

mîn name lûtet Keiîn.
my name sounds Keiîn.

ouch geruochet mîn der kûnec Artûs
also deigns me the king Arthur

ze truhsæzen in sîme hûs.
as steward in his house.

sîner swestersûne ein,
of-his sister's-sons one,

der edel ritter Gâwein,
the noble knight Gaweîn,

4785

ditze ros er mir lêch:
this horse he to-me lent:

mirst leit daz er mirs niht verzêch;
to-me-is grievous that he me-of-it not refused;

wan sô wær mir schande buoz,
for so were to-me disgrace spared,

die ich nû dulden muoz.
which I now endure must.

- 4790 dô mîn herre hiute enbeiz
when my lord today ate
 (den tiuvel ich mir selben weiz
(the devil I for-me self know
 daz ich mir niht sanfte kunde leben.
that I myself not gently could live.
 nâch laster begundich streben:
after reproach began-I to-strive:
 des hân ich gewonnen teil),
of-that have I won share),
- 4795 dô riet mir mîn unheil
then counseled me my misfortune
 daz ich mir sîn ros lîhen bat.
that I for-me his horse lend asked.
 dô lêch er mirz an der stat.
then lent he to-me-it on the spot.
 het er dô des niht getân,
bad he then that not done,
 sô wære ich schanden erlân,
so would-have-been I of-disgraces spared,
- 4800 diu mir sus ist widervarn.
whiche to-me thus is befallen.
 nû mac doch daz nieman bewarn
now can yet that no-one guard-against
 daz im geschehen sol.
what to-him happen shall.
 edel riter, nû tuo sô wol
noble knight, now do so well
 und gip mirz wider durch got,
and give to-me-it back for God,
- 4805 od ich bin aller der spot
or I am of-all the mockery
 die mich wider in sehent gân.
who me back in see go.'

Êrec sprach 'daz sî getân.

Erec said 'that he done.

ich gibe iuz mit gedingen:

I give to-you-it with condition:

ir sult ez wider bringen

you shall it back bring

dem hern Gâweine von mir.

to-the lord Gawein from me.

4810

mit iuvern triuwen müezet ir

with your faithfulness must you

daz geloben wider mich.'

that promise to me.'

Keiîn sprach 'daz tuon ich.'

Keiîn said 'that do I'

unde tet ouch alsô,

and did also so,

wande er was der rede frô.

for he was of-the speech glad.

4815

als er daz ros zuo im gewan,

when he the horse to him got,

'ich bite iuch, tugenthafter man,

I ask you, virtuous man,

sît ir mir sît gewesen guot,

since you to-me have been good,

daz ir mir volle wol tuot,

that you to-me fully well do,

daz ich iuch müeze erkennen:

that I you may know:

4820

geruochet iuch mir nennen.

deign yourself to-me name.

ez schadet iu niht und hilfet mich.

it harms you not and helps me.

iuwern namen den wolte ich

your name that would I

wizzen durch iuwer frûmekeit.

know for your prowess.

4825 ez ist mir immer ein leit,

it is to-me ever a sorrow,

muoz ich alsô scheiden hin

(if)-must I so part away

daz ich iuwers namen unwîse bin

that I of-your name ignorant am

und weiz niht wiech iuch nennen sol,

and know not how-I you name shall,

so ich iwer gedæhte gerne wol.

though I of-you would-think gladly well.

4830 durch got sagt mir wer ir sît.'

for God tell me who you are.'

er sprach 'niht ze dirre zît:

he said 'not at this time:

ez wirt iu lîhte her nâch kunt.'

it becomes to-you perhaps here after known.'

nû schieden sî sich ze stunt.

now parted they themselves at once.

ir ietweder reit sînen wec,

of-them each rode his way,

4835 Keiîn unde Êrec.

Keiîn and Erec.

Keiîn hin ze hove reit,

Keiîn thither to court rode,

und twang in des sîn wârheit

and compelled him to-that his truthfulness

daz ers doch niht verdagte,

that he-it yet not kept-silent,

wan daz er rehte sagte

but that he rightly told

sîn schâmelîchez mære,

his shameful tale,

4840

wiez im ergangen wære:

how-it to-him gone were:

und gap dem schaden solhen glimph

and gave to-the harm such grace

daz man gar für einen schimph

that one wholly for a jest

sîne schande vervie

his disgrace took

und man sîn ungespottet lie.

and one of-him unmocked left.

4845

als in dô solch manheit

when to-them then such manhood

von dem ritter wart geseit,

of the knight was told,

dô nam sî besunder

then took them severally

alle michel wunder

all great wonder

wer der ritter möhte sîn.

who the knight might be.

4850

dô sprach Keiîn

then said Keiîn

‘ichn mohtes niht erkennen:

I could-him not recognize:

er wolde sich niht nennen.

he would himself not name.

sîne stimme hôrt ich,

his voice heard I,

wande er sprach vil wider mich:

for he spoke much against me:

4855

als ich ez dar an kiesen mac,

as I it there by discern can,

so ist ez Êrec fil de roi Lac.'

so is it Erec son of king Lac.'

dô rietens alle gelîche

then guessed-they all alike

er wære ez wêrlîche.

he were it truly.

Gawein's Wile

XXVI

Arthur sends Gawein and Keii after Erec. Gawein greets him warmly, but Erec refuses to turn aside and sends his service instead. Gawein secretly sends Keii to have Arthur move his camp across Erec's road while he delays Erec with conversation. When Erec sees the tents he accuses Gawein of tricking him, saying he is too tired and wounded for court. Gawein calms his anger, and Arthur and the court receive Erec and Enite with honor.

4860 der kûnec Artûs sprach dô

the king Arthur said then

'nû wære ich es harte frô

'now were I of-it very glad

und lônde ims mit minnen,

and would-reward to-him-it with love,

swer mir in möhte gewinnen.

whoever for-me him might win.

Gâwein, daz tuo ich

Gawein, that do I

4865 an Keiîn unde an dich.

to Keiîn and to thee.

ir habt mich unz an disen tac
you have me until at this day

sô gêret daz ich niene mac
so honored that I not-at-all can

iu gesprechen wan guot.
of-you speak but good.

ist daz ir nû ditze tuot,
(if)-is that you now this do,

daz wil ich vor im allen hân
that will I before it all have

swaz ir mir liebes habt getân.
whatever you to-me of-love have done.

Gâwein, nû wis gemant
Gawein, now be reminded

wiez under uns ist gewant,
how-it between us is disposed,

daz dû mîn nâhster friunt bist,
that thou my nearest friend art,

und sûme dich deheine frist
and delay thyself no time

mêre durch die liebe mîn.
more for the love mine.

hilf mir und der kûnegîn
help me and the queen

daz wir Êrecken gesehen:
that we Erec see:

sô mac mir liebers niht geschehen.'
so can to-me dearer not happen.'

Gâwein sprach 'herre,
Gawein said 'lord,

ermant mich niht sô verre,
remind me not so far,

wan ich der verte willic bin.
for I of-the journey willing am.

4870

4875

4880

jan lebt er niht den ich für in
indeed lives he not whom I before him

iezuo wolde sehen.
now would see.

4885 und lât mir got sô wol geschehen
and (if)-lets to-me God so well happen

daz ich im immer kume zuo,
that I to-him ever come to,

ich sage iu, herre, waz ich tuo:
I tell you, lord, what I do:

ich bringen, mag ich ins erbiten.'
I bring-him, (if)-can I him-of-it persuade.'

sâ zehant sî dô riten.
straightway at-once they then rode.

4890 Gâwein brâhte Kein
Gawein brought Kein

rehte des endes hin
right that way thither

da er in lâzen hâte.
where he him left had.

vil wunderlîchen drâte
very wondrously quickly

îlten sî im beide nâ,
hastened they him both after,

4895 allez ûf sîner slâ.
all upon his track.

und alsô schiere er ûf der vart
and so soon he on the journey

von in ervolget wart,
by them overtaken was,

Gâwein der tugentrîche
Gawein the virtue-rich

gruozte in minneclîche,
greeted him lovingly,

nâch friuntlîcher stimme

after friendly voice

4900

unde niht mit grimme.

and not with grimness.

dar an er im bescheinde

there in he to-him showed

daz erz in guot meinde,

that he-it to-him well meant,

er gap im einen guoten tac.

he gave him a good day.

als im Êrec fil de roi Lac

when to-him Erec son of king Lac

4905

dô genâden began,

then to-thank began,

dâ marhter sînen namen an:

there marked-be his name by:

und als er in erkande,

and when he him recognized,

zehant er in nande.

at-once he him named.

vaste er in zuo im gevie,

fast he him to him took,

4910

als ins diu freude niht erlie,

as him-of-it the joy not released,

von liebe diu im geschach,

from love which to-him happened,

wan er in starc und guot sach.

for he him strong and good saw.

er hiez in willekomen sîn

he bade him welcome he

unde sîne friundîn.

and his lady-love.

4915

er gnâdet im vil sêre

he thanked him very sorely

sô friuntlicher êre

so friendly honor

dier im an sînem gruoze bôt:

which-be to-him in his greeting offered:

von triuwen gie im nôt

from faithfulness went to-him need

4920 daz er imz wider sande.

that he to-him-it back sent.

als schiere er in nande,

as soon he him named,

er sprach zuo dem gaste

he said to the guest

‘wir haben iu vil vaste

‘we have you very fast

durch den walt geriten nâch.

through the forest ridden after.

4925 frâget ir von wiu sô gâch

(if)-ask you from what so hasty

uns sî oder waz ich welle,

to-us be or what I want,

herre, wîlent geselle,

lord, formerly comrade,

daz sol iuch unverswigen sîn.

that shall to-you unconcealed be.

ich bit iuch, nû lât werden schîn

I ask you, now let become evident

4930 ob iu mîn herre lieb sî:

whether to-you my lord dear be:

unde sage iu wâ bî.

and tell you where by.

dô unser friunt Keiîn

when our friend Keiîn

hin ze hove daz ros mîn

thither to court the horse mine

mir wider brâhte

to-me back brought

unde er iwer gedâhte

and he of-you thought

ze alsô grôzer manheit,

with so great manhood,

als er daz mære het geseit,

as he the tale had told,

dô nam uns wunder

then took us wonder

alle besunder

all severally

wer ez möhte hân getân:

who it might have done:

doch rieten wir ûf einen wân

yet guessed we upon an expectation

iwern namen mit glîchem munde.

your name with like mouth.

nû bat uns dâ ze stunde

now asked us there at once

ân nôt sô verre

without need so greatly

diu kûnegin und mîn herre

the queen and my lord

daz wir iu îlten nâch

that we you hastened after

(dâ von ist uns gewesen gâch)

(there from is to-us been hasty)

und iuch im brâchten ze hûs.

and you to-him should-bring to house.

4935

4940

4945

wart iu der künec Artûs

(if)-became to-you the king Arthur

4950 ie lieb oder wert,

ever dear or worthy,

sô seht daz er iht werde entwert

so see lest he at-all be refused

und geruochet in gesehen.

and deign him see.

mac daz nû geschehen,

(if)-can that now happen,

sô gewan nie man

so got never man

4955 grœzer lieb dan er dar an.

greater joy than he there in.

ditz leistet âne widerstrît,

this perform without resistance,

ob ir dienstes willic sît:

if you of-service willing are:

dar zuo sîn wirs alle frô.’

there to are we-of-it all glad.’

Êrec antwurt im alsô

Erec answered him thus

4960 ‘mich hât der künec verschuldet wol

‘me has the king deserved well

daz ich im immer wesen sol

that I to-him ever be shall

mînes muotes undertân:

of-my spirit subject:

und swâ ich im des abe gân,

and wherever I to-him of-it off go,

daz sîn gebot niene geschiht,

that his command not-at-all happens,

4965 dâ wendet mîchs der wille niht,

there turns me-from-it the will not,

ichn tuo swes er niht wil enbern:

I do whatever he not will forgo:

disse muoz ich in entwern.

this must I him refuse.

mîn willn ich im wol schîn tuo,

my will I to-him well evident make,

kumt ez immer dar zuo,

(if)-comes it ever there to,

als ez doch vil lîhte getuot,

as it yet very likely does,

daz mir lîp unde guot

that to-me body and goods

durch in ze wâgen geschiht:

for him to hazard happens:

daz entriuget danne niht,

that deceives then not,

ich erzeige im wol wie er mir ist.

I show him well how he to-me is.

er sol mich ze dirre frist

he shall me at this time

mit hulden lâzen rîten.

with favor let ride.

ich habe ze disen zîten

I have at these times

mich gmaches bewegen gar.

myself of-comfort renounced wholly.

geruochet, swâ ich hin var,

deign, wherever I thither fare,

daz ich iuwer dienest müeze sîn.

that I your servant may be.

4970

4975

4980

mîm herren und der kûnegîn

to-my lord and to-the queen

sult ir mînen dienest sagen

shall you my service say

und mich zornes übertragen.'

and me of-anger spare.'

als daz her Gâwein ersach

when that sir Gawein saw

4985 daz er sô gar dâ wider sprach,

that he so wholly there against spoke,

des wart er ein teil unfrô.

of-that became he a part unglad.

sîme gesellen wincter dô

to-his comrade winked-be then

unde rûnde im zuo.

and whispered to-him to.

er sprach 'edel riter, nû tuo

he said 'noble knight, now do

4990 tugentlichen unde wol,

virtuously and well,

als ichz verschulden sol

as I-it deserve shall

und ouch mîn herre umbe dich:

and also my lord toward thee:

daz selbe rât ich.

that same counsel I.

rît drâte dînen wec

ride quickly thy way

4995 unde sage daz Êrec

and say that Erec

niht erwinden welle.

not turn-back will.

sus hân ich an im, geselle,

thus have I in him, comrade,

uns erdâht einen list

for-us devised a trick

der doch nû der wægest ist.

which yet now the best is.

sage im, welle er in gesehen,

tell him, (if)-will he him see,

5000

daz müeze alsô geschehen

that must so happen

als ich dir wol gesagen kan.

as I to-thee well tell can.

heiz inz rûmen von dan

bid him-it clear from thence

da er lît in dem walde,

where he lies in the forest,

und daz er sich balde

and that he himself quickly

5005

für mache ûf den wec

forth make onto the way

dâ der ritter Êrec

where the knight Erec

jenhalp ûz rîten sol.

on-yonder-side out ride shall.

die wîle kan ich in wol

the while can I him well

ûf dem wege mit listen

on the way with cunning

5010

gesûmen unde gefristen

delay and bold-off

daz er niht für kumt.'

that he not ahead comes.'

'und ist daz ez uns frumt'

'and (if)-is that it us profits'

sprach der ritter Keiîn,

said the knight Keiîn,

- 5015 'daz sol mit guotem willen sîn.
'that shall with good will be.'
 zehant reit er unde tete
at-once rode he and did
 allez nâch sîner betē.
all after his request.
 als ditz der künec Artûs vernam,
when this the king Arthur heard,
 die tavel man abe nam,
the table one off took,
 5020 und îlte für vil drâte
and hastened ahead very quickly
 nâch sînes neven râte
after his nephew's counsel
 und leit sich rehte umbe den wec,
and laid himself right across the way,
 daz der ritter Êrec
that the knight Erec
 niender kœme dâ bî,
nowhere should-come there by,
 5025 ern rite rehte für sî.
unless-be rode right before them.
 Gâwein, der tugenthafte man,
Gawein, the virtuous man,
 Êrecken sûmen began
Erec to-delay began
 mit listen swâ er kunde,
with cunning wherever he could,
 unz daz er im die stunde
until that he from-him the time
 5030 mit kurzewîle abe genam
with pastime off took
 unz daz der künec wol für kam.
until that the king well ahead came.

swie ofte ern wider rîten bat,
however often he-him back to-ride asked,

sô sprach er 'iezuo an der stat,'
so said he 'just-now on the spot,'

unz er mit schœner trûgenheit
until he with fair deceit

den walt mit im ûz reit
the forest with him out rode

5035

da der kûnec umbe den wec lac.
where the king across the way lay.

und als Êrec fil de roi Lac
and when Erec son of king Lac

die poulûne alle ersach,
the pavilions all saw,

niht liebes im dar an geschach:
nothing pleasing to-him there in happened:

wan daz velt was sô vol.
for the field was so full.

5040

ouch erkande er sî wol,
also recognized he them well,

wan er sî dicke het gesehen.
for he them often had seen.

(lacuna)

ich wæne mich verriten hân.
I think myself misridden have.

ir habt niht wol an mir getân,
you have not well by me done,

5045

her Gâwein: ditz ist iuwer rât.
sir Gawein: this is your counsel.

nû habe ich iuwer missetât
now have I your misdeed

selten alsô vil vernomen.
seldom so much heard.

daz ich dâ her bin komen,
that I there hitber am come,

5050 des was mir vil ungedâht.
of-that was to-me very unbought.

ir habt mich übele her brâht.
you have me ill hitber brought.

swer hin ze hove kumt
whoever thitber to court comes

dô ez im sô lützel frumt
when it to-him so little profits

als ez mir nû hie tuot,
as it to-me now here does,

5055 dem wær dâ heime als guot.
to-him were there home as good.

swer ze hove wesen sol,
whoever at court be shall,

dem zimet freude wol
to-him befits joy well

und daz er im sîn reht tuo:
and that he for-himself his right do:

dâ kan ich nû niht zuo
there can I now not to

5060 und muoz mich sûmen dar an
and must myself delay there in

als ein unvarnder man.
as a not-traveling man.

ir seht wol daz ich ze dirre stunt
you see well that I at this bour

bin müede unde wunt
am weary and wounded

und sô unhovebære
and so uncourtly

5065 daz ich wol hoves enbære,
that I well court would-do-without,

hetet irs mich erlân.

had you-of-it me spared.

ir habt niht wol an mir getân.

you have not well by me done.'

Gâwein den zorn mit güete rach.

Gawein the anger with kindness avenged.

er hiels in zuo im unde sprach

he embraced him to him and spoke

'herre, senftet iuwern zorn.

'lord, soften your anger.

jâ ist ein friunt bezzer vlorn

indeed is a friend better lost

bescheidenlîchen unde wol

discreetly and well

dan behalten anders danne er sol.

than kept otherwise than he shall.

wirt im ein teil ze zorne gâch,

(if)-becomes to-him a part to anger hasty,

er verstêt sich rehtes dar nâch

he understands himself of-right there after

und hât in lieber danne ê.

and has him dearer than before.

waz mac ich nû gesprechen mê?

what can I now speak more?

wan sol ich iuch beswæret hân,

for (if)-shall I you burdened have,

daz ist doch durch guot getân.

that is yet for good done.

ouch rihtent selbe über mich.'

also judge yourself over me.'

alsô versuonde er sich

thus reconciled he himself

mit im vil tugentlîchen,

with him very virtuously,

5070

5075

5080

daz im begunde entwîchen
that from-him began to-withdraw

ungemüete unde leit,
ill-humor and sorrow,

5085 ez wart ouch græzer werdekeit
it was also greater worthiness

noch volleclicher êre
or fuller honor

nie manne erboten mêre
never to-man offered more

danne im dâ ze hove geschach.
than to-him there at court happened.

daz man in dâ gerne sach
that one him there gladly saw

5090 des tâten vil wol schîn
of-that made very well evident

Artûs und diu künegîn
Arthur and the queen

mit der massenê gar.
with the household wholly.

sî wâren willekomen dar:
they were welcome there:

man enphienc sî wirdeclîche
one received them worthily

5095 beidiu gelîche,
both alike,

Êrecken unde Ênîten,
Erec and Enite,

die ze manegen zîten
who for many times

unruowe hâten gephegen
unrest had kept

ûf unkunden wegen.
upon unknown ways.

Famurgan's Salve, and the Parting

XXVII

Guinevere takes Enite into her care, and the knights disarm Erec while the queen binds his wound with a salve made by Famurgan, Arthur's sister. The narrator describes Famurgan's magic: she could circle the world in a moment, live in fire or under the sea, turn men into beasts, command demons and dragons, and knew the power of every herb. Feeling healed, Erec insists on leaving the next morning despite all pleas, and the court weeps as Arthur returns to Kardigan.

Ginovêr diu künegîn

Guinevere the queen

5100

tete süezen willen schîn

made sweet will evident

dô ir frouwe Ênîte kam.

when to-her lady Enite came.

in ir phlege sî se nam

into her care she her took

unde fuorte sî von danne

and led her from thence

al besunder von ir manne

all apart from her husband

5105

in ir heimliche.

into her privacy.

dâ wart vil wîplîche

there was very womanly

von in beiden geklagt,

by them both lamented,

vil gefrâget unde gesagt

much asked and told

von ungewonter arbeit

of unaccustomed hardship

5110

die diu frouwe Ênîte erleit.

which the lady Enite suffered.

sô kumberlicher sache

so troublesome matter

ergaztes mit gemache

compensated-her with comfort

diu vil edele künegîn

the very noble queen

5115 die wîle und daz mohte sîn.

the while that that could be.

ouch wart er Êrec

also was he Erec

von den rittern enwec

by the knights away

gefüeret besunder

led apart

dâ er alsô wunder

where he so wondrous

5120 sîner müede ruowe enphie.

of-his weariness rest received.

diu ritterschaft zuo im gie

the knighthood to him went

und entwâfent in sâ.

and disarmed him straightway.

er gwan vil rîcher knaben dâ,

he got many rich squires there,

der keiner dâ ze stunde

of-whom none there at once

5125 dem andern niht engunde

to-the other at-all granted

daz er wære für in guot.

that he were before him good.

sich vleiz von in ein glîcher muot

itself strove from them a like spirit

swaz im dienst mohte sîn.

whatever to-him service could be.

vil schiere kam diu künegîn

very soon came the queen

in klagen unde schouwen

him to-lament and behold

5130

mit allen ir frouwen.

with all her ladies.

ein phlaster wart mit ir getragen:

a salve was with her carried:

dâ von wil ich iu sagen

there from will I to-you tell

wie guot ez ze wunden was.

how good it for wounds was.

manec verchwunder sîn genas.

many-a mortally-wounded-one of-it recovered.

5135

swem ez wart gebunden

to-whomever it was bound

über sîne wunden,

over his wounds,

den geswar sî nimmer mêre,

him ached they never more,

unde heilte niht ze sêre,

and healed not too sorely,

wan ze rehter mâze genuoc.

but to right measure enough.

5140

kein übel nie dar zuo gesluoc.

no ill ever there to struck.

allez argez ez vertreip;

all bad it drove-away;

swaz ez guotes vant, daz bleip;

whatever it of-good found, that remained;

und die dô von genâsen,

and those there from recovered,

die überhuop ez mâsen,

them spared it scars,

5145

daz man die lîch eben sach

that one the flesh even saw

als dâ nie wunde geschach.

as-if there never wound happened.

mit disem phlaster verbant

with this salve bound

der kûneginne hant

the queen's hand

5150 des ritters sîten.

the knight's side.

diu werlt ze deheinen zîten

the world at no times

bezzer phlaster nie gewan.

better salve ever got.

wundert nû deheinen man,

(if)-wonders now any man,

der ez gerne vernæme,

who it gladly would-hear,

5155 von wanne ditze phlaster kæme,

from whence this salve should-come,

daz hâte Fâmurgân,

that had Famurgan,

des kûneges swester, dâ verlân

the king's sister, there left

lange vor, dô si erstarp.

long before, when she died.

waz starker liste an ir verdarp

what strong arts in her perished

5160 unde fremder sinne!

and strange wits!

sî was ein gotinne.

she was a goddess.

man mac diu wunder niht gesagen
one can the wonders not tell

von ir, man muoz ir mê verdagen,
of her, one must of-her more keep-silent,

der diu selbe frouwe phlac.
which the same lady practiced.

doch sô ich meiste mac,
yet as I most can,

sô sage ich waz sî kunde.
so tell I what she could-do.

swenne sî begunde
whenever she began

ougen ir zouberlist,
to-show her magic-art,

sô hete sî in kurzer frist
so had she in short time

die werlt umbevarn dâ
the world traveled-around there

unde kam wider sâ.
and came back straightway.

ich enweiz wer siz lêrte.
I know-not who her-it taught.

ê ich die hant umbe kêrte
before I the hand around turned

od zuo gesluege die brâ
or to struck the brow

sô fuor sî hin und schein doch dâ.
so fared she away and appeared yet there.

sî lebete ir vil werde.
she lived to-herself very worthily.

im lufte als ûf der erde
in-the air as on the earth

mohte sî ze ruowe sweben,
could she at rest hover,

5165

5170

5175

ûf dem wâge und drunder leben.

on the wave and under-it live.

5180 ouch was ir daz untiure,

also was to-her that not-dear,

sî wonte in dem fiure

she dwelt in the fire

als sanfte als ûf dem touwe.

as gently as on the dew.

ditz kunde diu frouwe:

this could-do the lady:

und sô sî des gern began,

and when she of-it to-desire began,

5185 sô machte sî den man

so made she the man

ze vogeles oder ze tiere.

into bird or into beast.

dar nâch gap si im schiere

there after gave she to-him soon

wider sîne geschäft:

back his shape:

sî kunde zoubers die kraft.

she knew of-magic the power.

5190 sî lebte vaste wider gote:

she lived hard against God:

wand ez warte ir gebote

for it waited-on her commands

daz gevügel zuo dem wilde

the birds with the game

an walde und an gevilde,

in forest and in field,

und daz mich daz meiste

and that me the most

5195 dunket, die übelen geiste,

seems, the evil spirits,

die dâ tievel sint genant,
who there devils are named,

die wâren alle in ir hant.
they were all in her hand.

sî mohte wonder machen,
she could wonders make,

wande ir muosten trachen
for to-her must dragons

von den lûften bringen
from the airs bring

5200

stiure zuo ir dingen,
help to her things,

die vische von dem wâge.
the fishes from the wave.

ouch hete sî mât
also had she kinsmen

tief in der helle:
deep in the hell:

der tiuvel was ir selle.
the devil was her comrade.

5205

der sante ir ze stiure
who sent to-her for help

ûf ûz dem fiure,
up out-of the fire,

swie vil sî des wolde.
however much she of-it wished.

und swaz sî haben solde,
and whatever she have should,

vome ertrîche,
from-the earth,

5210

des nam si unangestlîche
of-that took she unanxiously

alles selbe genuoc.
all herself enough.

diu erde deheine wûrzen truoc,
the earth no herb bore,

ir enwære ir kraft erkant
to-her unless-were its power known

5215 also mir mîn selbes hant.
as to-me my own hand.

sît daz Sibille erstarp
since that Sibyl died

und Erictô verdarp,
and Erichtho perished,

von der uns Lûcânus zalt
of whom to-us Lucan told

daz ir zouberlîch gewalt
that her magic power

5220 swem sî wolde gebôt,
to-whomever she would commanded,

der dâ vor was lange tât,
who there before was long dead,

daz er erstuont wol gesunt
that he arose well sound

(von der ich iu hie zestunt
(of whom I to-you here at-once

nû niht mêre sagen wil,
now not more say will,

5225 wande es wurde ze vil),
for of-it would-become too much),

so gewan daz ertrîche

so got the earth

(daz wizzet wêrlîche)

(that know truly)

von zouberlîchem sinne

of magic wit

nie bezzer meisterinne

never better mistress

danne Fâmurgân,

than Famurgan,

5230

von der ich iu gesaget hân.

of whom I to-you said have.

von diu wêr er niht wîser man

from that were he not wise man

swer im wolde dar an

whoever to-him would there in

nemen grôz laster,

take great reproach,

ob sî ein phlaster

if she a salve

5235

für in geprüeven kunde.

for him devise could.

jâ wæn man niender funde,

indeed think-I one nowhere would-find,

swie sêre ers wolde ersuochen,

however sorely he-it would search,

die kraft ûz arzetbuochen,

the power out-of physic-books,

sô krefteclîche liste

such mighty arts

5240

die sî wider Kriste

as she against Christ

uopte sô des gerte ir muot.

practiced when of-it desired her spirit.

daz phlaster machte sî guot
the salve made she good

von allem ir sinne,
from all her wit,

5245 dâ mite diu küneginne
there with the queen

Êrecke die wunden bant.
to-Erec the wounds bound.

des phlasters güete er wol enpfant:
the salve's goodness he well felt:

wande als er verbunden wart,
for when he bandaged was,

dô hügte er wider ûf die vart.
then thought he again on the journey.

5250 in dûhte er wære gar genesen
him seemed he were wholly healed

und wolde dâ niht langer wesen,
and would there not longer be,

swie vil sî in gebâten
however much they him begged

und rede dar umbe hâten,
and speech there about had,

ritter unde frouwen
knights and ladies

5255 die kômen in schouwen.
who came him to-see.

doch handelten sî die nacht
yet treated they the night

vollecliche nâch ir maht
fully after their might

die werden geste
the worthy guests

und sô sî kunden beste,
and as they could best,

und heten des gerne vil getân, 5260
and would-have of-it gladly much done,

wolt ins Êrec gehenget hân:
would to-them-of-it Erec permitted have:

des er doch niht entete.
which he yet not did.

des künec Artûses bete
the king Arthur's request

unde der künegîn
and the queen's

mohte niht frum gesîn 5265
could not profit be

daz sin mit deheinen listen
that they-him with any cunning

langer möhten gefristen
longer could keep

danne unz morgen fruo:
than until tomorrow early:

da enstuont doch dehein bete zuo.
there stood yet no request to.

als ez dô morgen wart 5270
when it then morning became

unde er ouch sîner vart
and he also of-his journey

durch niemen wolde abe stân,
for no-one would off stand,

ditz dûhte se alle missetân.
this seemed to-them all misdane.

nu enbeiz der künec durch in fruo:
now ate the king for him early:

dar nâch zôch man diu ros zuo. 5275
there after drew one the horses up.

Êrec urloup dô nam,
Erec leave then took,

als sînen zûhten wol gezam,
as to-his breeding well befitted,

von rittern und von frouwen.
from knights and from ladies.

dô moht man êrste schouwen
then might one first behold

5280 an ir aller gebâren
in their all bearing

daz sî dâ lieb wâren:
that they there dear were:

wan dô weinde wîp unde man
for then wept woman and man

vor leide dô sî schieden dan.
for sorrow when they parted thence.

den kûnec muote ez sêre,
the king grieved it sorely,

5285 daz er niht mêre
that he not more

in dem walde wolde bestân:
in the forest would stay:

er fuor gegen Kardigân.
he fared toward Kardigan.